CERTIFICATE

By Authority Of
THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
Legally Binding Document

By the Authority Vested By Part 5 of the United States Code § 552(a) and Part 1 of the Code of Regulations § 51 the attached document has been duly INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE and shall be considered legally binding upon all citizens and residents of the United States of America. *HEED THIS NOTICE*: Criminal penalties may apply for noncompliance.

* * *

Document Name: NCRP 48: Medical Radiation Protection for Medical and Allied Health Personnel

CFR Section(s): 42 CFR 37.43

Standards Body: National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement

APPROVED

Official Incorporator:
THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR
OFFICE OF THE FEDERAL REGISTER
WASHINGTON, D.C.

NCRP REPORT No. 48

RADIATION PROTECTION FOR MEDICAL AND ALLIED HEALTH PERSONNEL

NCRP

National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements

Preface

This report of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, which supersedes NCRP Report No. 34, is concerned with structural shielding design and evaluation for medical installations utilizing x rays and gamma rays of energies up to 10 MeV. The report contains recommendations and technical information as well as a discussion of the various factors which must be considered in the selection of appropriate shielding materials and in the calculation of the barrier thickness.

Recent availability of new data used to calculate the shielding requirements has resulted in revision of some of the shielding requirement tables set out in Appendix C. Specific values of the parameters used in the formulation of the tables are explicitly given. The calculational procedures are presented in such a manner as to facilitate their use in deriving customized shielding requirements not to be found in the tables. An adjunct to the report presenting full sized reproductions of the curves for barrier requirements is also an innovation for the NCRP.

This report is mainly intended for radiological physicists, radiologists, and regulatory personnel who specialize in radiation protection. Sections of the report should be of interest also to architects, hospital administrators, and others who are concerned with the planning of new radiation facilities.

The present report was prepared by the Council's Scientific Committee 9 on Medical X- and Gamma-Ray Protection Up to 10 MeV (Structural Shielding Design). Serving on the Committee during the preparation of this report were:

JOHN P. KELLEY, *Chairman*

Members	*Consultants*
ROBERT O. GORSON	DAVID KEASEY
ANTOLIN RAVENTOS	RAYMOND WU

The Council wishes to express its appreciation to the members of the Committee and the consultants for the time and effort devoted to the preparation of this report.

Lauriston S. Taylor
President, NCRP

Bethesda, Maryland
January 15, 1976

Contents

Preface v

1. Introduction 1

2. Barrier Thickness Requirements 4

3. Shielding Materials 8

- 3.1 General 8
- 3.2 Choice of Material 8

4. Shielding Details 13

- 4.1 General 13
- 4.2 Joints 13
- 4.3 Voids in Protective Barriers 14
- 4.4 Access to Radiation Room 21
- 4.5 Observation Windows 22

5. Diagnostic Installations 24

- 5.1 General 24
- 5.2 Fluoroscopic Installations 26
- 5.3 Radiographic Installations 26
- 5.4 Photofluorographic (Photo-Roentgen) Installations 28
- 5.5 Cystoscopic Installations 29
- 5.6 Surgical Suites 29
- 5.7 "Special Procedure" Installations 29

6. Therapy Installations 31

- 6.1 General 31
- 6.2 X-Ray Installations of Less Than 500 kV 33
- 6.3 X-Ray Installations of 0.5 to 10 MV (Megavoltage or Supervoltage) 34
- 6.4 Gamma-Ray Beam Therapy Installations (Teletherapy) 36

7. Brachytherapy 38

8. Radiation Protection Survey 40

- 8.1 General 40
- 8.2 Inspection During Construction 41
- 8.3 Radiation Scanning and Measurement 42
- 8.4 Report of Radiation Protection Survey 43

APPENDIX A. **Definitions** 44

APPENDIX B. **Computation of Barrier Requirements** 49
APPENDIX C. **Tables** 63
APPENDIX D. **Figures** 91
APPENDIX E. **Architectural and Equipment Information to be Supplied to the Qualified Expert for Use in Shielding Design** 108
References 109
The NCRP 111
NCRP Reports 117
Index 128

1. Introduction

This report, which supersedes NCRP Report No. 34 [1][1], presents recommendations and technical information related to the design and installation of structural shielding. It includes a discussion of the various factors to be considered in the selection of appropriate shielding materials and in the calculation of barrier thicknesses. It is mainly intended for radiological physicists, radiologists, and regulatory personnel who specialize in radiation protection. Sections of the report should be of interest also to architects, hospital administrators, and others who are concerned with the planning of new radiation facilities.

The concept of Maximum Permissible Dose Equivalent (MPD) as expressed by the NCRP, i.e. the maximum dose equivalent that persons shall be allowed to receive in a stated period of time, has been used as the basis for the recommendations in this report. The numerical values of the maximum permissible dose equivalents (see Table 1, Appendix C) are such that the probability of adverse biological effects is extremely low and is considered to present an acceptable risk. The MPD values used in this report are those agreed upon by the NCRP at the time of publication of this report. They are considered reasonable in light of the present scientific knowledge concerning the biological effects of ionizing radiation, and constitute acceptable standards for the use of ionizing radiation with safety. They are not limits above which biological damage can be assumed. In addition to specifying values for the Maximum Permissible Dose Equivalent, the NCRP recommendations call for radiation exposure to be kept at a level "as low as practicable" (or at the lowest practicable level). This subject is dealt with in detail in NCRP Report No. 39 [2]. For the purposes of this report, maximum average weekly exposure values of 100 mR for radiation workers and 10 mR for other workers have been selected for shielding design. These numerical values should not be interpreted as an alternate definition of their MPD. In most instances shielding design for radiation workers can be based upon an average weekly exposure value less than the 100 mR maximum average weekly exposure (e.g., 10 mR average weekly exposure) without an objectionable increase in cost of the structural shielding [3]. In such cases the use of the lower weekly exposure value for design purposes is consistent with the "lowest practicable level" concept for radiation exposure. The use of this lower design factor, however, must not be considered a reduction in the MPD as discussed above.

---

[1] Figures in brackets indicate the literature references listed on page 109.

This report is intended primarily for use in planning and designing new facilities and in remodeling existing facilities. Since corrections or additions after facilities are completed can be expensive, it is important that structural shielding be properly designed and installed in the original construction process. It is also advisable that the planning include consideration of possible future needs for new equipment, higher radiation energies, and increased workloads.

It is recommended that the shielding be designed by a qualified expert (see definition given in Appendix A) to ensure that the required degree of radiation protection is achieved economically. This objective will be furthered by providing the qualified expert with all pertinent information regarding the proposed radiation equipment and its use, type of building construction and occupancy of nearby areas, such as is listed in Appendix E. If possible, the expert should be consulted during the early planning stages; often the shielding requirements affect the choice of location of radiation facilities and type of building construction. It is highly desirable that final shielding drawings and specifications be reviewed by the qualified expert and by the pertinent federal, state or local agency (if applicable) before construction is begun. While some other aspects of x- and gamma-ray facilities, such as interlocks, warning signs and lights, electrical safety and room lighting, are mentioned in this report, these aspects are not represented as a complete treatment of these topics.

Recent availability of new data used to calculate the shielding in radiation facilities has resulted in revision from previous recommendations of some of the shielding requirement tables in Appendix C. However, installations designed before the publication of this report and meeting the requirements of the Appendix C shielding tables in NCRP Report No. 34 [1] need not be re-evaluated.

While specific recommendations are given, alternate methods may prove equally satisfactory in providing radiation protection. The final assessment of the adequacy of the design and construction of structural shielding should be based on the radiation survey of the completed installation. If the radiation survey shows deficiencies, additional shielding or modifications of equipment and procedures are required.

Exposure, and its special unit the roentgen, are defined in Appendix A. For radiation protection purposes of this report, the number of roentgens of exposure may be considered numerically equivalent to the number of rads of absorbed dose in tissue or the number of rems of dose equivalent.

Terms used in the report are defined in Appendix A. Since, however, recommendations throughout the report are expressed in terms of *shall* and *should*, the use of these terms is explained here:

(1) *Shall* indicates a recommendation that is necessary to meet the currently accepted standards of radiation protection[2].

(2) *Should* indicates an advisory recommendation that is to be applied when practicable[2].

---

[2] In the following sections of this report, the words "shall" and "should" are italicized to emphasize that they are being used in the special sense conveyed by the explanation given here.

2. Barrier Thickness Requirements

The principal objective of radiation protection is to ensure that the dose received by any individual is as low as practicable and, in any case (except for medically required doses to patients), does not exceed the applicable maximum permissible value. A secondary objective is to prevent damage or impairment of function of radiation-sensitive films and instruments. These objectives may be achieved by any one, or a combination, of the following methods:

(a) providing sufficient *distance* between the individual or object and the source or sources of radiation.
(b) limiting the *time* of exposure, and
(c) interposing a protective (attenuating) *barrier* between the individual or object and the source or sources of radiation.

Distance involves the inverse square relationship[3]; the distances are determined by the positions of persons (or radiation-sensitive devices) relative to the source. It is usually assumed that the individual is at least 30 cm (12 inches) away from the barrier.

The *time* factor is determined by the period during which an individual is in a radiation field. Consequently it involves both the time that the source is "ON"[4] and the fraction of the "ON" time during which a person is in the radiation field. Generally the protective housing for gamma-ray beam sources is so constructed that the MPD cannot be exceeded for individual exposure due only to source housing leakage radiation when the source is "OFF". Similar considerations apply to x-ray sources under "standby" conditions.

In most applications covered by this report protective *barriers* are

---

[3] The statement that the exposure rate from the source varies inversely as the square of the distance from the source is based on the assumptions that the source dimensions are small compared to the distance and that absorption in the intervening medium is negligible. The first assumption is valid for calculating the requirement for the primary barrier; the absorption in air is generally insignificant if the radiation energy is more than 50 keV and the distance is less than 30 m (100 feet).

[4] Here the "ON" time means the time that (a) the x-ray beam is "ON", or (b) the beam control mechanism of gamma-ray beam equipment is in the "ON" position, or (c) a sealed source is outside of its shielded storage container.

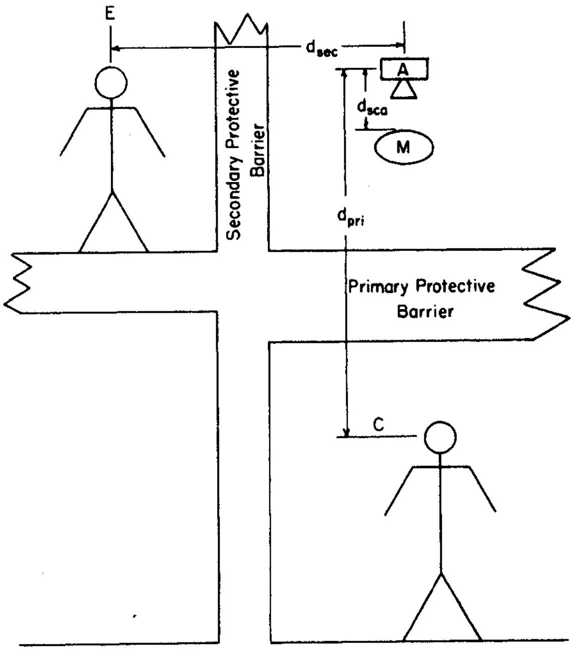


Fig. 2-1. Elevation view of radiation room and its surroundings with indication of distances of interest for radiation shielding calculations. A is the radiation source, M the patient, and C and E positions that may be occupied by persons.

required. Some of the physical factors used in determining the barrier requirements for beam sources are shown in Figure 2-1. The source at A, surrounded by its protective housing[5], emits a beam of x or gamma radiation directed at the patient, M. This beam is attenuated somewhat as it passes through the patient; it is usually attenuated much more by the primary protective barrier before irradiating a person at position C, at a distance d_{pri} from the radiation source.

The leakage radiation from the protective housing and the radiation scattered by the patient are attenuated by the secondary protective barrier before irradiating persons at position E, at a distance of d_{sec} from the source and the patient. Radiation scattered from the primary protective barrier may also reach position E. However, the radiation scattered from the patient is usually more significant than that scattered from the primary barrier.

---

[5] The source is usually contained in a protective housing with the shielding material close to the source. The thickness of the shielding material required to obtain a given attenuation is essentially independent of its distance from the source. However, by placing the shielding close to the source, the surface area (and hence the volume and weight of the shield) is smaller than if the shielding were to be placed at a greater distance.

Tables giving minimum protective barrier requirements are included in Appendix C of this report for weekly exposure limits, P, equal to 0.1 and 0.01 roentgen, the maximum design levels for controlled and noncontrolled areas, respectively.

It has been shown [3] that the cost of shielding for typical radiographic and therapeutic x-ray installations will only increase approximately 25 percent if the shielding design for controlled areas is based on a weekly exposure of 0.01 roentgen rather than the maximum design value of 0.1 roentgen. The use of the lower weekly exposure for design purposes is consistent with the "as low as practicable" concept.

Tables 2, 3 and 4 (Appendix C) give suggested values of weekly workload, W, use factor, U, and occupancy factor, T, respectively, for use in those cases where more specific information is not available at the time of planning. The occupancy factors listed in Table 4 are to be applied only to nonoccupationally exposed persons (for whom $P = 0.01$ R).

For occupationally exposed persons, the occupancy factor, T, usually is assumed to be unity. For example, a corridor which is used by the public and which is outside a radiation room would have an occupancy factor of 1/4 for the public, but of unity for occupationally exposed persons. Occupational exposure means exposure of an individual to ionizing radiation in the course of employment in which the individual's normal duties or authorized activities necessarily involve the likelihood of exposure to ionizing radiation.

Occupationally exposed persons may be assumed to spend their entire work period in *controlled* areas. The fraction of each person's time which will be spent at any one location often cannot be predicted. Thus, it must be assumed that all positions from which persons are not specifically excluded are likely to be occupied by a given person for unspecified periods of time. With these assumptions, all accessible portions of the controlled area *should* be designed with an occupancy factor of unity for *occupationally exposed persons*. However, if the portion of time spent by any person at all locations can be predicted, the occupancy factor, T, for some areas may be less than unity, but the weekly exposure *shall not* average, over a period of one year, more than 0.1 R.

Areas which are not part of the radiologic department or suite *should not* be declared *controlled areas* for the purpose of permitting reduction in the degree of protection of occupants. Areas within the department or suite which are not directly related to the use of radiation sources *should not* be declared controlled areas.

Tables 5 through 24 (Appendix C) give, directly, the minimum barrier requirements for typical radiation installations and can be used in most cases. The numerical value of the barrier thickness required has been rounded-off to the nearest 0.05 mm of lead and 0.5 cm of concrete for peak x-ray tube potentials up to 300 kV and to the nearest 0.5 cm of lead or concrete for peak x-ray tube potentials greater than 300 kV. In special cases, where the tables do not include the necessary values of the parameters, computation of the barrier requirements is necessary. Appendix B outlines the computations required and illustrates how the values given in the tables of Appendix C were obtained.

The equations used for computation of barrier requirements and the tabular values obtained from them assume that only one primary source is producing the radiation exposure at a given point. If more than one primary source can contribute to such an exposure, the pertinent tabular barrier requirements must be increased. For example, suppose that two sources could contribute to the exposure in a room. The barriers should be increased so that the exposure from both does not exceed the design exposure limit. If the sources are of similar energy, this is usually done by adding a half-value-layer to the barrier requirement calculated for each source independently. Under this condition each of the sources contributes one-half of the design exposure limit. However, if the radiation energy of one of the two sources is substantially less than the other, the required degree of protection may be achieved more economically by increasing the calculated barrier thickness for the lower energy source by several half-value-layers.

3. Shielding Materials

3.1 General

Most materials (see Table 25, Appendix C) may be used for radiation shielding if employed in a thickness sufficient to attenuate the radiation by the required degree. Although the two materials most often used for shielding are lead and concrete, others may prove to be more advantageous under certain circumstances. In selecting shielding material the following factors should be considered:

(a) Required thickness and weight of material
(b) Possibility of multiple use (e.g., use of material that serves for both shielding and structural purposes)
(c) Uniformity of shielding
(d) Permanence of shielding
(e) Optical transparency (when required)
(f) Quality control requirements
(g) Cost of material, including its installation and maintenance
(h) Appearance

These factors are discussed below.

3.2 Choice of Material

The choice between lead and concrete is usually made for the reason of economy and depends upon the energy of radiation to be attenuated. For example, a concrete primary protective barrier for a 100 kV x-ray installation would have to be about 80 times as thick and about 17 times as heavy as lead to provide the same degree of shielding. On the other hand, for a 1 MV x-ray installation, the concrete thickness would be only about six times as great, about 25 percent heavier than an equivalent lead barrier and considerably less costly. Where space is an important consideration, it is sometimes advantageous to use lead or steel in place of part, or all, of the concrete in a barrier for high energy radiation. For many years it has been a general rule that lead is more economical than concrete as shielding material for barriers for x rays from machines operating at 300 kV or below. However, changing economic conditions and local price variations may negate this rule for specific cases. Careful economic comparisons *should* be made in cases where the economic choice is not obvious.

3.2.1 *Lead.* Lead can be installed in many ways and in different forms.

(a) *Sheet Lead.* Sheet lead is commercially available in thicknesses from less than a millimeter to about a centimeter (about $^1/_{32}$ inch to $^3/_8$ inches)[6]. Its flexibility permits it to be installed on curved or irregular surfaces. It can be nailed in place, although care must be taken to avoid sagging that would result if the spacing between nails were too great. Nail holes may result in significant radiation leaks. In such cases the holes *should* be covered with supplementary lead. Where the edges of two lead sheets meet, continuity of shielding *shall* be ensured at the joints by a sufficient overlap of the lead sheets or by the use of a cover strip over butt joints (see Section 4). The principal disadvantages of sheet lead are that it is not self-supporting and it is easily damaged. For these reasons, it is usually necessary to cover sheet lead with some form of wallboard, tile or plaster.

(b) *Lead-lined Wallboard.* Plywood, pressed wood or other vegetable fiber board sheets are commercially available with sheet lead firmly cemented to one side or laminated between sheets of the material. A variety of finishes is available and the sheets are readily installed with lead-lined strips of the same material covering the joints. Such wallboards may be removed and re-installed at a new location, a distinct advantage for temporary x-ray installations.

(c) *Lead-lined Lath.* Lead-lined lath is similar to lead-lined wallboards except that the lead is bonded to a perforated board to which plaster will adhere.

(d) *Lead-lined Blocks.* Lead-lined blocks, consisting of two cinder or concrete half-blocks with sheet lead sandwiched between them, are commercially available in the same size as standard blocks. In the use of lead-lined blocks, the lead sheets *shall* have sufficient overlap at the joints. (See Section 4.) The shielding afforded by the concrete or cinder block component supplements that of the lead and may be considered in shielding design. Lead-lined block partitions offer the advantages that they are relatively simple to construct, particularly in a new building; they provide considerable structural strength, and may be surfaced in the usual manner by the application of plaster or other conventional wall finishes.

[6] See Table 26 (Appendix C) for the relationship between thickness and weight per unit area of lead.

3.2.2 *Concrete.*

(a) *Common Poured (Cast) Concrete*[7]. The principal advantage of concrete is that it is a standard building material commonly used, especially in floors and ceilings of modern buildings. The radiation attenuation of a concrete barrier depends upon its thickness, density and composition. The concrete barrier thicknesses indicated in the shielding tables in this report are based on a concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}). For other concrete densities, a correction must be applied to the thicknesses indicated in the tables to ensure that the area density (g cm^{-2}, lb ft^{-2}) remains the same. Variations in concrete density arise from differences in the densities of the components, from foaming or tamping techniques used in the casting of the concrete, or from different proportions used in the mix. The elemental composition of the concrete depends upon the source of supply of its components. For common concrete, however, the difference in the elemental composition does not modify the attenuation of photons significantly if allowance is made for differences in density.

(b) *Loaded Concrete.* Where space is limited, high density concrete may be used to advantage. It is produced by introducing into the mixture loading material such as barytes, magnetite, ilmenite, steel, ferrophosphorus or lead. The shielding property of common concrete can be greatly increased by the addition of such materials. The cost of using loaded concrete, however, is considerably higher than that of common concrete.

The casting of loaded concrete at the site presents special problems including the need for more careful mixing to ensure uniform distribution of loading material. Quality control is needed to ensure that no part of the cast barrier has a density of less than that specified. In addition, extra heavy equipment and forms are required to handle the greater weight.

(c) *Solid Blocks.* Both common and loaded concrete solid blocks are available in standard dimensions. Quality control is simplified as the density can readily be checked before the blocks are laid. Mortar (without voids) having a density not less than that of the block, *should* be used in protective barriers of block construction. For multiple course construction, the joints *should* be staggered.

3.2.3 *Other Masonry Material.* Most mineral-base building materials (solid cinder blocks, bricks, plaster, granite, marble[8]) have a composition similar to that of concrete but may differ in density. Thus the concrete thickness values indicated in Appendix C must be adjusted for the difference in density to obtain the same required weight per unit area.

---

[7] Steel reinforcement increases the effective shielding, because steel offers greater attenuation than the concrete it displaces.

[8] Measurements indicate that the concrete equivalence of marble at 100 kV is about 15 percent greater than calculated from the density ratio [4].

Hollow blocks of cinder, gypsum or similar materials may also be used for shielding if appropriate allowance is made for the voids. The concrete equivalence of the block may be estimated on the basis of the thickness and density of the thinnest solid part of the block. The actual equivalence will be somewhat greater depending upon the particular geometry.

Plaster containing barium provides higher attenuation than common plaster and has been used for low voltage x-ray installations. Its disadvantages are that considerable care is necessary to ensure uniform density, it is more apt to develop cracks with age than common plaster and the cost of installation is higher.

3.2.4 *Steel and Other Materials*. The use of steel for shielding is generally advantageous where space is limited or where structural strength is of major importance. Thick steel plates are sometimes used in megavoltage facilities. Conventional steel partitions and doors may, in some cases, serve as secondary protective barriers for low voltage installations where the shielding requirements are minimal [5].

Earth or sand fill may sometimes be used to advantage for shielding purposes. Provision *shall* be made, however, to ensure that the shielding material remains in place.

It is generally impractical to use wood products for shielding purposes due to the great thicknesses required.

3.2.5 *Transparent Materials*.

(a) *Plate Glass*. The use of ordinary plate glass (density 2.5–2.7 g cm^{-3}, refractive index 1.5–1.6) for shielding is generally advantageous only where the protection requirements are minimal. Since its composition is comparable to that of concrete, the thickness indicated for concrete in the tables may be used, with a density correction, for determining the shielding requirements [6]. Multiple thicknesses of plate glass have been employed in megavoltage installations. In such cases, an optically clear fluid having a suitable index of refraction, such as glycerin or mineral oil, *should* be used in the space between the glass plates to decrease the reflection from the interfaces and thereby increase light transmission. The light reflection losses may be reduced by more than a factor of ten by the use of such optical fluids.

(b) *Lead Glass*. Glass with a high lead content is commonly used for shielding purposes. It is available with densities ranging from about 3.3 to 6.2 g cm^{-3} and in a variety of thicknesses. Due to its deep yellow color and relatively low light transmission, the higher density glass (refractive index 1.97) is not commonly used for observation windows if more than a few sheets are required. Non-browning lead glass (density 3.3 g cm^{-3}, refractive index 1.59) has a light yellow color and a $^1/_4$ inch thick sheet has a lead equivalence of about 2 mm for 100 kV x rays. Since high density lead glass darkens with exposure to radiation, it is sometimes covered on the exposed side with a sheet of non-browning lead glass to reduce this effect.

(c) *Liquids*. Prior to the availability of thick lead glass, water and other solutions, such as optical grade zinc bromide solution, in a glass and steel container were commonly used in observation windows. These windows, however, require periodic checks for any loss of fluid. Furthermore, liquids occasionally become turbid with age and require replacement.

4. Shielding Details

4.1 General

The shielding of the radiation room *shall* be so constructed that the protection is not impaired by joints, by openings for ducts, pipes, etc. passing through the barriers, or by conduits, service boxes, etc. embedded in the barriers. Doors (or other means of access to the room) and observation windows also require special consideration to ensure adequate protection without sacrifice of operational efficiency. These and related problems are considered in detail in this section.

It is important that the shielding be designed and installed properly; corrections made after the room is completed can be expensive. It is often impractical to make an overall experimental determination of the adequacy of the shielding prior to the completion of the building construction and the installation of the radiation equipment; however, shielding voids may be detected by the use of a suitable portable x-ray or gamma-ray source. Periodic visual inspection during the entire construction period is recommended in any case. Sometimes properly constructed shielding is later impaired by the removal of part of it for the installation of ducts and recessed boxes in walls, ceilings and floors or of hardware in lead-lined doors.

While specific recommendations are given, alternate methods of shielding may prove equally satisfactory. From the point of view of radiation protection, the particular method used is not important provided that the radiation survey of the completed installation establishes that the structural shielding is adequate.

4.2 Joints

The joints between lead sheets *should* be constructed so that their surfaces are in contact and with an overlap of not less than 1 cm (1/2 inch) or twice the thickness of the sheet, whichever is greater. Welded, or burned, lead seams are satisfactory if the lead equivalence of the seams is not less than that required of the barrier.

Protective barriers of solid block (or brick) construction *should* have mortar (without voids) of at least the same density as the block, and for multiple course construction the joints *should* be staggered.

Joints between different kinds of protective material *should* be constructed so that the overall protection of the barrier is not impaired. Typical examples are shown in Figure 4-1; the extension of the lead into the concrete is required to attenuate the radiation scattered in the concrete. Baffles are usually required for door sills exposed to the useful beam. Typical designs are shown in Figure 4-2.

4.3 Voids in Protective Barriers

Openings in protective barriers for doors, windows, ventilating ducts, conduits, pipes, etc. may require radiation baffles to ensure that the required degree of overall protection is maintained. Whenever possible, the opening *should* be located in a secondary barrier where the required shielding thickness is less. The design of the baffles will depend upon a number of factors. These include:

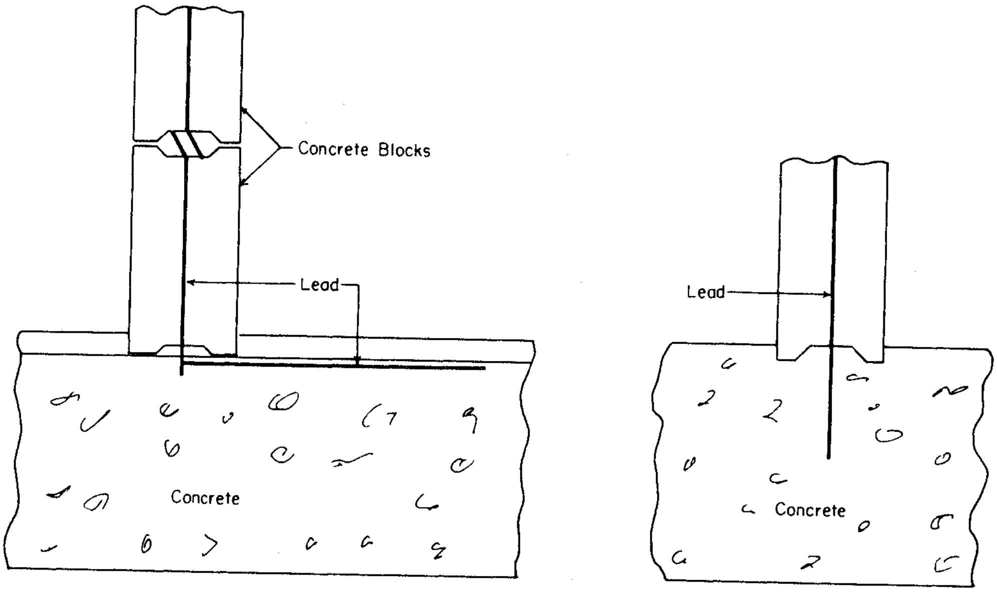


Fig. 4-1. Typical joints between different kinds of protective material. The length of the horizontal or vertical extension of the lead will depend on the energy and direction of the radiation; diagnostic installations usually do not require extension of the lead.

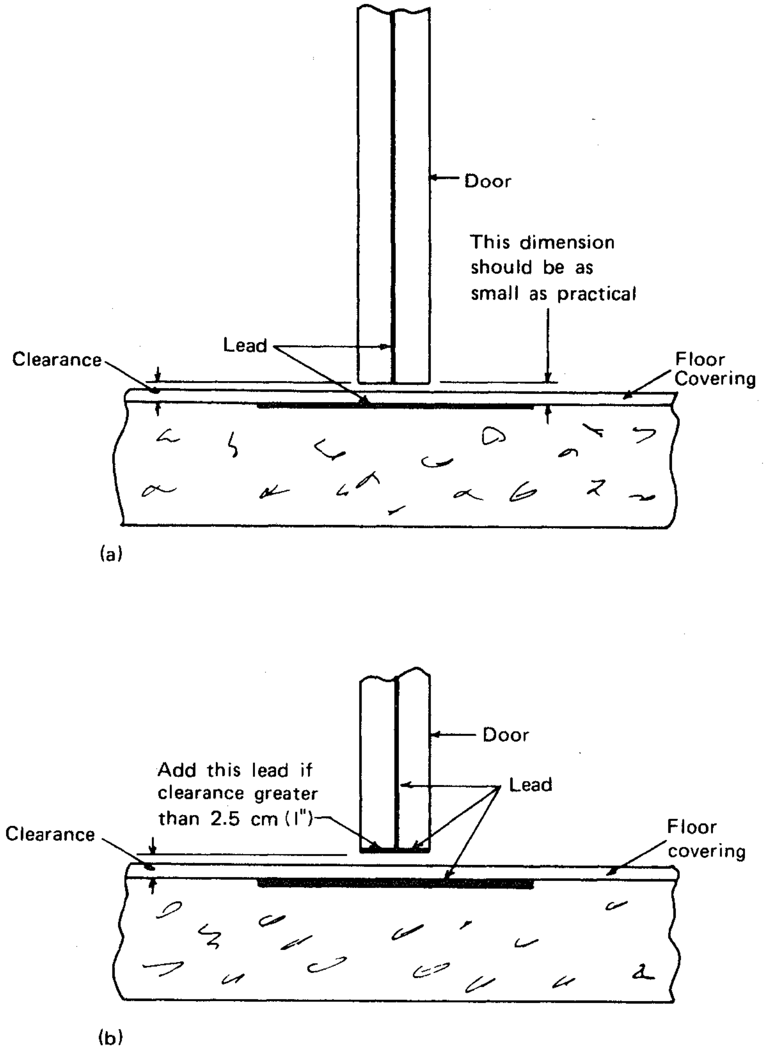

Door
This dimension should be as small as practical
Lead
Clearance
Floor Covering
(a)
Door
Add this lead if clearance greater than 2.5 cm (1")
Lead
Clearance
Floor covering
(b)

Fig. 4-2. Typical lead baffles under doors exposed to the useful beams generally not required for diagnostic installations.

(1) energy of radiation
(2) orientation and field size of useful beam
(3) size and location of opening in the protective barrier
(4) geometrical relationship between radiation source and opening
(5) geometrical relationship between opening and persons, materials or instruments to be protected.

Figures 4-3, 4-4, 4-5, 4-6 and 4-7 show typical baffle designs. In 4-3, 4-4 and 4-5 the opening is in a secondary protective barrier and, therefore, exposed to scattered and leakage radiation only. In Figures 4-6 and 4-7 the opening is located in a primary protective barrier.

The illustrated methods of protection are intended as guides only; effective protection at minimum cost can be achieved only by consideration of all pertinent factors of each individual installation. Generally, the most economical shielding material for a baffle is lead because the amount of radiation scattered from lead is less than that from lighter materials and the scattered radiation is more readily attenuated in lead. Since lead is not structurally self-supporting, it *should* be mounted so that there will be no sagging.

Since the primary protective barrier in diagnostic and superficial (low voltage) therapy x-ray rooms need not extend above 2.1 m (7 feet)

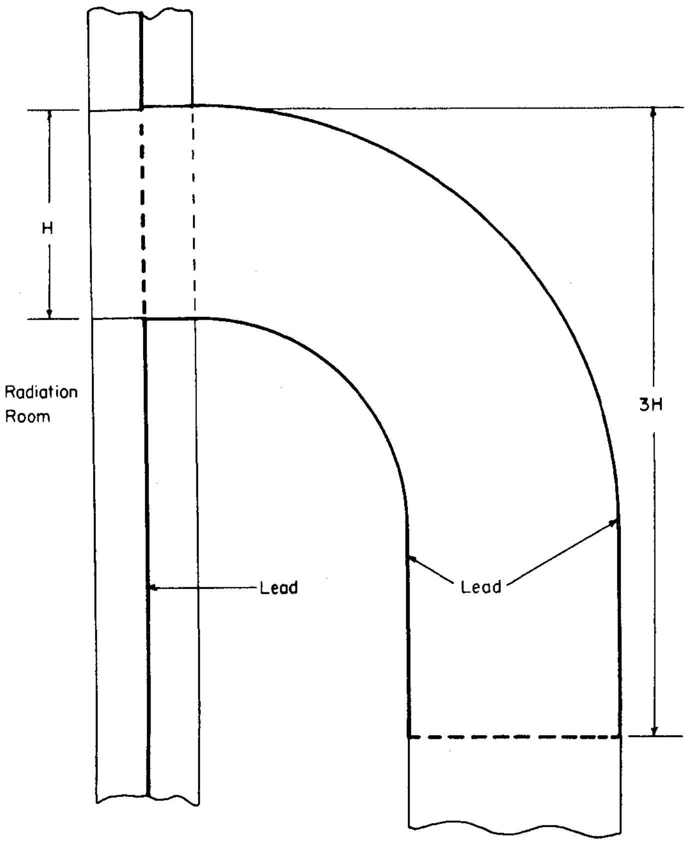


Fig. 4-3. Typical baffle design for openings in secondary protective barrier.

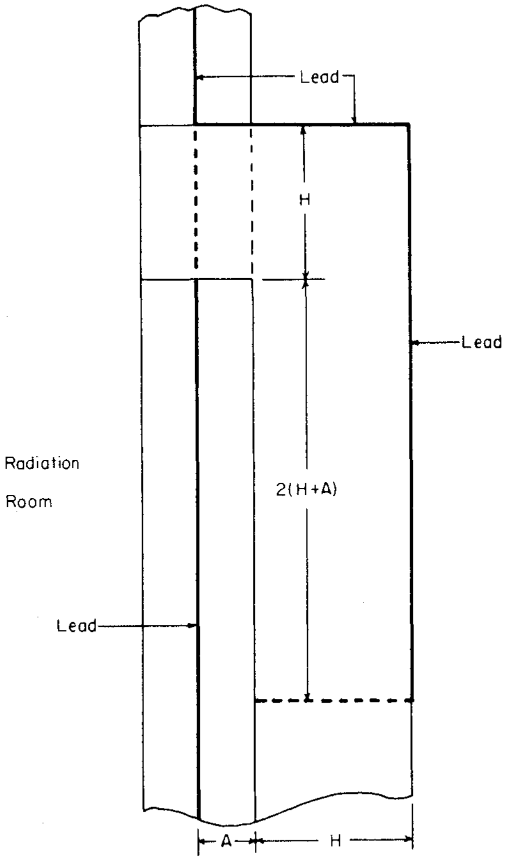


Fig. 4-4. Typical baffle design for openings in secondary protective barrier.

from the finished floor[9], openings in the walls above this height generally do not require radiation baffles. For orthovoltage (150 kV to 500 kV) and megavoltage installations, the wall shielding *should* extend to the ceiling barrier or to the roof, necessitating baffles for ducts, conduits, etc. passing through the walls. Where ducts terminate at a grille in the wall surface of a primary protective barrier, a lead-lined baffle may be required in front of the grille; the baffle must be at a sufficient distance to permit adequate flow of air and must extend far enough beyond the perimeter of the opening in order to provide the required degree of protection. This is illustrated in Figures 4-6 and 4-7.

[9] This height has been chosen because the height of the x-ray source and of most individuals is less than 2.1 m (7 feet).

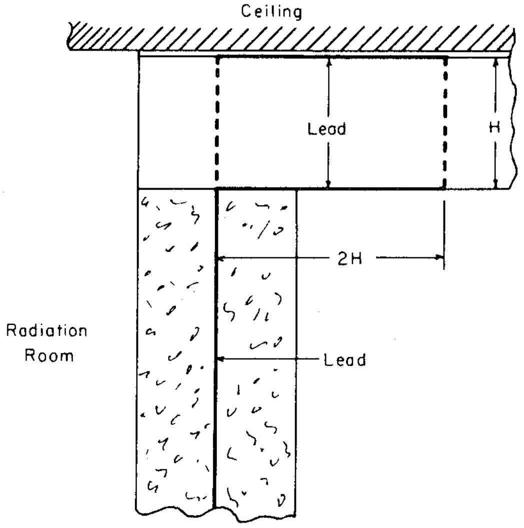


Fig. 4-5. Typical baffle design for openings in secondary protective barrier.

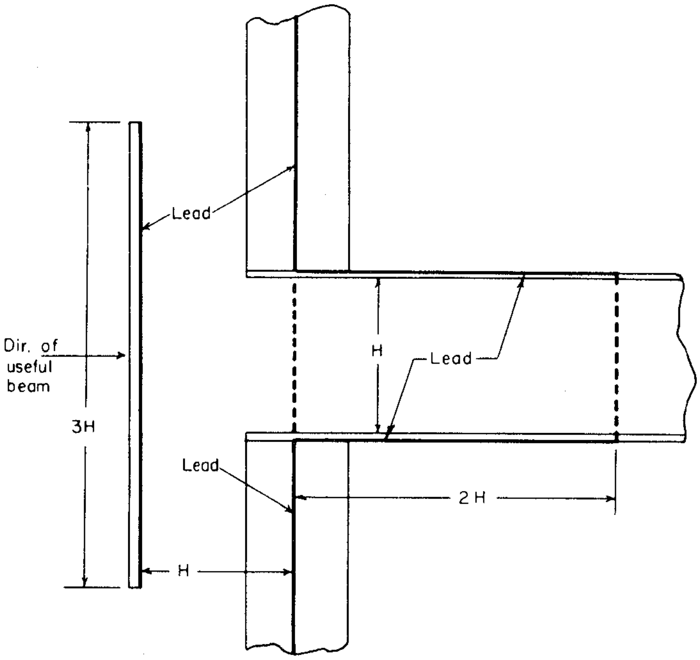


Fig. 4-6. Typical baffle design for openings in primary protective barrier for orthovoltage installations.

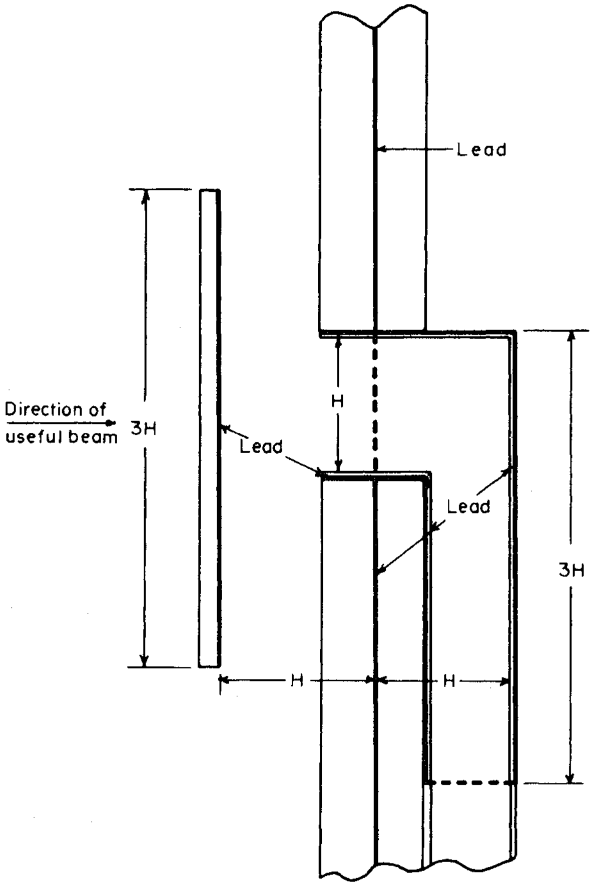


Fig. 4-7. Typical baffle design for openings in primary protective barrier for orthovoltage installations.

Service boxes, conduits, etc. imbedded in concrete barriers may require lead shielding to compensate for the displaced concrete. For example, if the outside diameter of a steel conduit is large[10], if the conduit passes through the barrier in line with the useful beam, or if the concrete does not fit tightly around the conduit, compensatory shielding is required.

Where supplementary lead shielding is required, its thickness[11]

---

[10] The conduit size not requiring compensatory shielding depends on radiation energy and type of barrier. Usually conduits 5 cm (2 inches) O.D. or less, do not require lead or other additional shielding.

[11] For such conduits it is usually practical to wrap the conduit with lead of half the total thickness required.

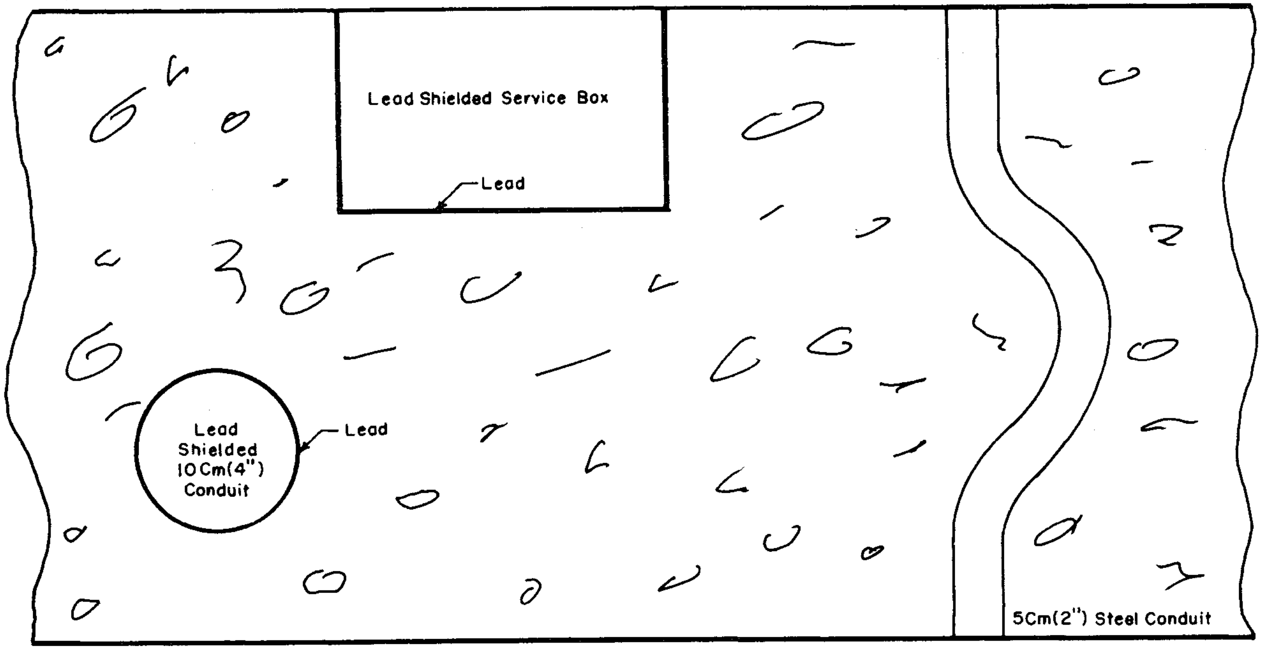


Fig. 4-8. Lead shielding of service box and conduit in concrete barrier. On the right are shown bends required for a conduit passing through the barrier.

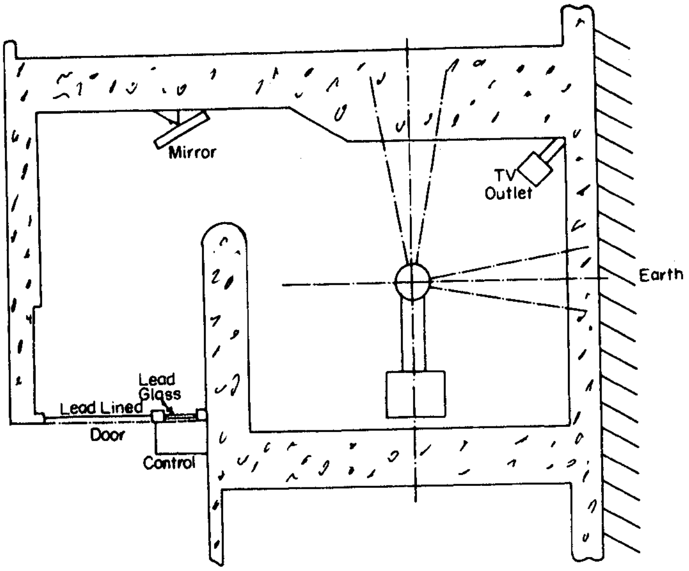


Fig. 4-9. Typical maze design for megavoltage therapy installation. The door and window are exposed only to radiation which has been scattered at least twice.

should be at least equal to the lead equivalence of the displaced concrete. The lead equivalence of the concrete will depend upon the energy of the radiation and may be obtained from the ratio of the *TVL*'s shown in Table 27 (Appendix C). The shielding *should* cover not only the back of the service boxes, but also the sides, or extend sufficiently to offer equivalent protection. This is shown in Figure 4-8. As illustrated in Figure 4-8, conduits passing through the barrier *should* have sufficient bends to reduce the radiation to the required level.

4.4 Access to Radiation Room[12]

Various methods are used for providing access to the radiation room. The most convenient is achieved by means of a door leading directly into the room. In the case of megavoltage installations, however, such a door requires heavy shielding, even when located in a wall exposed only to leakage and scattered radiation; it may weigh several tons and require an expensive motor drive; it will also require means for emergency manual operation. A maze arrangement gener-

---

[12] See Section 5.3.2 for design of control booths located within the diagnostic room.

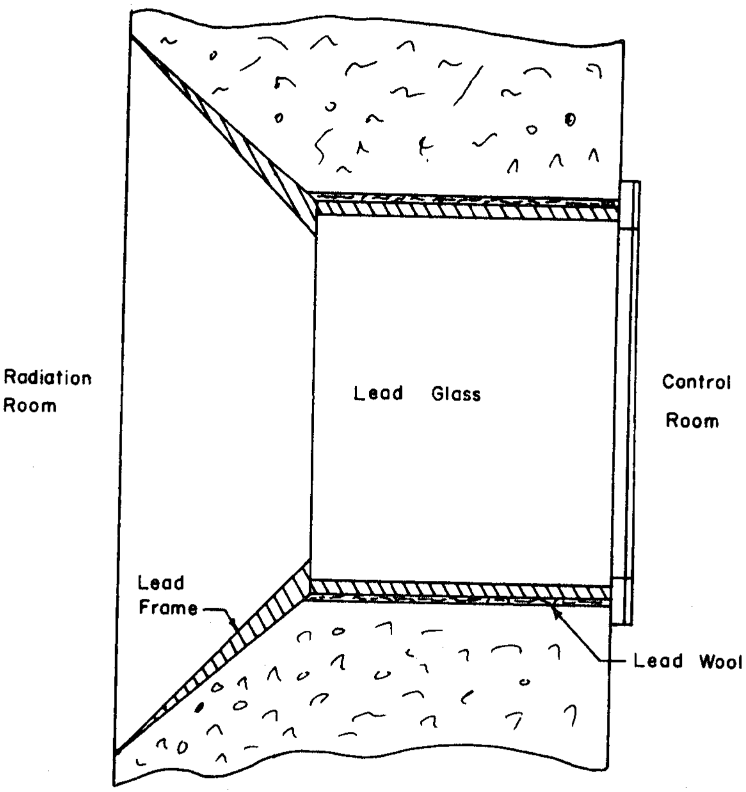


Fig. 4-10. Lead glass observation window with lead frame.

ally is the most economical, as the shielding of the door can be greatly reduced, usually to less than 6 mm of lead, it it is exposed to multiple scattered radiation only. The required lead equivalence of the door will depend upon radiation energy, maze design, weekly workload, and beam orientations. A typical maze design is shown in Figure 4-9. The principal objections to the use of a maze are increased space requirements and less convenient access to the treatment room, particularly for stretcher patients.

4.5 Observation Windows

Various methods of observing the patient during irradiation are considered in Sections 5.3.2 and 6.1.6. Where direct viewing is used for megavoltage installations, the design of the window presents

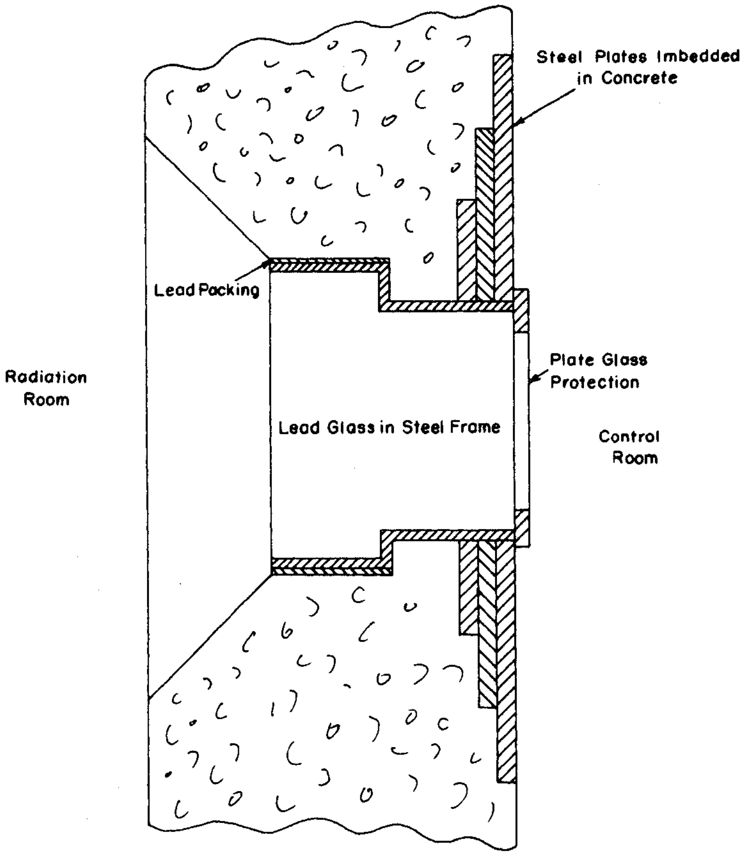


Fig. 4-11. Alternate lead glass observation window design for megavoltage installations.

special problems. Such windows are generally located in concrete protective barriers. To obtain a maximum field of vision for a given size window, the wall around the window is usually bevelled off on the radiation room side. The lead glass, therefore, must be mounted in a shielded frame which compensates for the reduced concrete thickness. Two typical designs are shown in Figures 4-10 and 4-11.

5. Diagnostic Installations[13]

5.1 General

X-ray tube potentials used in diagnostic installations generally range from 25 to 150 kV, with most examinations performed at 60 to 100 kV[14]. The amount of structural shielding required is, therefore, relatively low compared with that for high-voltage therapy installations. Frequently, the shielding provided by conventional building construction is sufficient. This often is the case, particularly for concrete floors and for concrete ceilings. When supplementary shielding is required, lead is generally used. However, there is little, if any, saving to be achieved by using a lead thickness of less than about one millimeter. In many instances, it may be more economical to employ greater thickness of concrete in the floor than to provide lead shielding.

5.1.1 *Location*. While the degree of occupancy of areas adjacent to the x-ray room determines, to a considerable extent, the amount of structural shielding required, the saving resulting from locating the room remote from occupied areas is usually outweighed by other considerations. The location of the installation is generally determined by such factors as the accessibility to related medical services, patient convenience and traffic control. Outside walls and, particularly, windows may require shielding to protect distant areas even if the nearest occupied area is not immediately adjacent.

5.1.2 *X-Ray Tube Potential and Workload*. All the factors determining shielding requirements, including the tube potential and workload, are discussed in Appendix B. For a given weekly workload (mA min) the maximum milliampere rating of diagnostic equipment does not affect the shielding requirements. Studies of the use of radiographic and fluoroscopic x-ray equipment indicate that the weekly workload seldom exceeds 1000 mA min and 1500 mA min, respectively [4]. Table 2 (Appendix C) shows typical workloads for various types of installations. These values *should* be used when specific information is not available.

---

[13] Recommendations concerning dental and veterinary x-ray installations are covered in NCRP Report No. 35 [7] and NCRP Report No. 36 [8], respectively.

[14] Diagnostic procedures have been performed experimentally with megavoltage equipment. Generally such equipment is used primarily for therapy, in which case the shielding requirements depend on the therapy workload and may be determined from Tables 14 to 20 (Appendix C). The shielding requirements for megavoltage installations used only for diagnostic purposes may be determined by use of the appropriate curves in Figures 4 through 10 (Appendix D).

The increased use of x rays for diagnostic purposes during the recent decades has not resulted in proportionally higher workloads. This is due to the employment of more sensitive x-ray films, intensifying screens and other image recording devices. In addition, the newer and more involved diagnostic procedures require more preparation time, thus reducing the number of examinations that can be carried out in a room in a week.

The majority of radiographs are taken with tube potentials considerably less than 100 kV. To simplify shielding design, however, an operating potential of 100 kV is usually assumed; this, in general, is a safe assumption and yet does not increase significantly the cost of shielding. When potentials greater than 100 kV are used, the increased barrier transmission is normally offset by a reduction in the workload. At higher kilovoltage, fewer milliampere-seconds are required for a given radiographic procedure. The barrier thickness specified in Table 5 (Appendix C) for a weekly workload of 1000 mA min at 100 kV will provide essentially the same degree of shielding for a weekly workload of 400 mA min at 125 kV or 200 mA min at 150 kV.

5.1.3 *Unprocessed Film Storage*. Protection of unprocessed x-ray films during storage requires special consideration since an exposure of less than 1 mR over a portion of the film may produce undesirable shadows. The exposure limit will depend upon the film type and the energy of the radiation. When films are stored in areas adjacent to an x-ray room it is usually necessary to provide more shielding than that required for personnel. This is particularly important when unprocessed films are stored for extended periods of time or when stored above the height of the shielding. Table 6 (Appendix C) gives the barrier thicknesses required to reduce the exposure to 0.2 mR for various workloads, distances, and storage periods.

5.1.4 *Room Lighting*. In fluoroscopic rooms utilizing image intensifiers, the general room illumination *should* be controlled from within the room by means of a dimmer. Such devices *should* also be provided in radiographic rooms that utilize a beam defining light. When direct fluoroscopic viewing is used, low intensity red lights are required to enable the personnel to function in the darkened room. (This type of fluoroscopic equipment is becoming obsolete.)

5.2 Fluoroscopic Installations

Fluoroscopic equipment is usually operated at 60 to 100 kV, with weekly workloads ranging from 100 to 2000 mA min. While a primary barrier is incorporated in the viewing device, secondary structural protective barriers are required against leakage radiation and radiation scattered from the patient and various parts of the equipment. Table 7 (Appendix C) gives the thicknesses of the required secondary barriers.

Vertical fluoroscopes are often installed in small rooms. By locating the fluoroscope so that the door is exposed to multiple scattered radiation only, lead lining of the door may not be necessary. Generally, shielding does not have to be added to the floor and ceiling.

The shielding requirements for combination radiographic-fluoroscopic installations are usually determined by the radiographic use of the room.

5.3 Radiographic Installations

5.3.1 *Use Factor*. Radiographic equipment usually is operated at 25 to 150 kV with weekly workloads of 10 to 1000 mA min. Typical workloads are indicated in Table 2 (Appendix C). The equipment generally is arranged to allow many different beam orientations. When specific information for a given installation is not available, the use factor, U, for walls (including those with a cassette holder or plate changer) may be assumed to be 1/4 (see Table 3, Appendix C). If there is a possibility that most of the exposures are to be made with the beam directed only at certain wall areas, higher use factors *should* be used. The use factor for the ceiling may be assumed to be zero, since the beam is rarely oriented toward the ceiling.

When mobile equipment is to be used routinely in one location, shielding *shall* be provided as for a fixed radiographic installation.

5.3.2 *Operator's Control Station*. The operator's control station *should* be in a separate room, or in a protected booth, or behind a fixed shield which will intercept the useful beam and scattered radiation from the patient. Typical designs of control stations are shown in Figure 5-1. When a door is required to shield the operator from

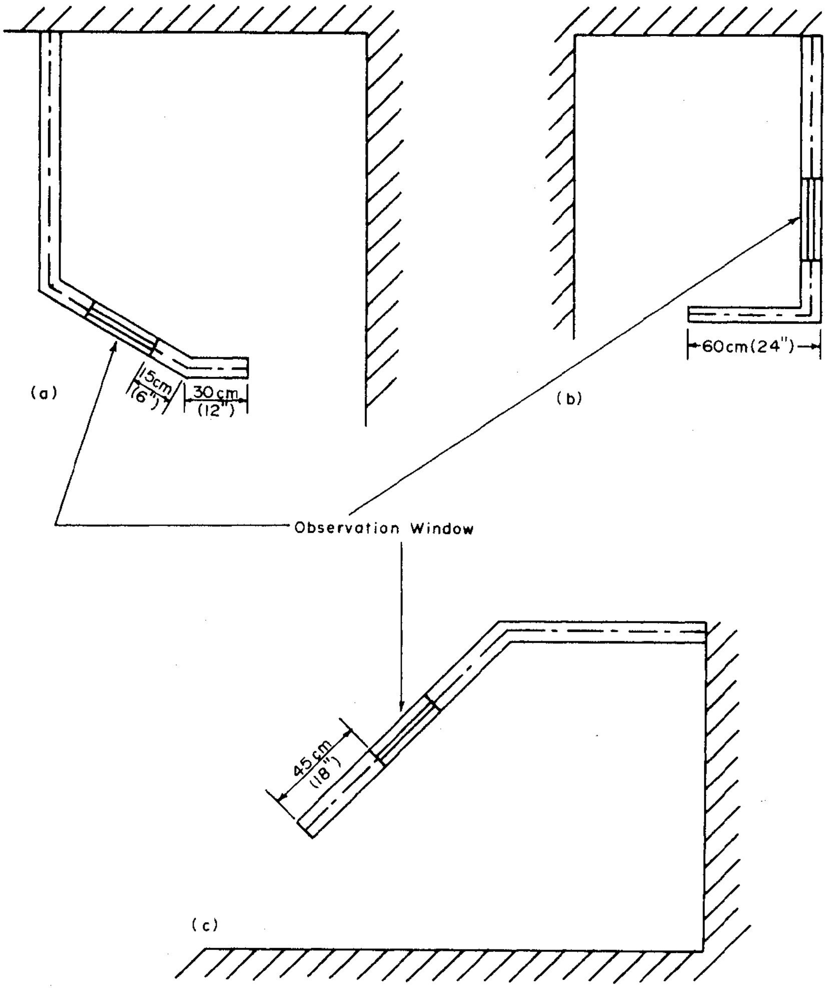


Fig. 5-1. Typical designs of control stations.

exposure to the useful beam or scattered radiation, electrical interlocks *shall* be provided to ensure that exposures cannot be made when the door is open.

Provision *shall* be made for the operator to observe and communicate with the patient from a shielded position at the control panel. When an observation window is provided, it *shall* have a lead equivalence at least equal to that required of the partition (or the door) in which it is located. The exposure switch *shall* be so arranged that it cannot be conveniently operated outside the shielded area [9].

An efficient traffic pattern for the operator and easy communication with a patient can generally be achieved by locating the x-ray control station within the radiographic room. When a protective door is not required, the edge of the observation window *should* be at least 45 cm (18 inches) from the edge of the control partition. Further, consideration *should* be given to the location of the opening of the control booth to minimize the exposure of the operator to scattered radiation. These factors have been considered in the design of a typical installation shown in Figure 5-2.

5.4 Photofluorographic (Photo-Roentgen) Installations

Photofluorographic equipment utilizes a camera to photograph the image produced on a fluorescent screen. When the x-ray tube orientation is restricted so that the useful beam may be directed only toward the camera, a primary protective barrier is required only for the wall behind the camera. The primary protective barrier *should* extend at least 30 cm (12 inches) beyond the perimeter of the entire wall area which can be struck by the useful beam. The use factor for this area is one. All other wall, floor and ceiling areas can be

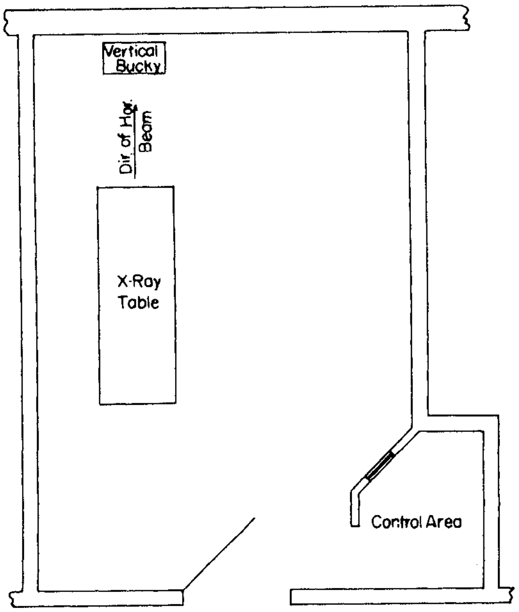


Fig. 5-2. Typical design for installation with control panel located within the radiographic room.

secondary barriers. However, in most new construction, the saving obtained by limiting the primary protective barrier to only a section of the wall is insignificant compared with the need for special care during construction and future restrictions on use of the room. See Section 5.3.2 for protection requirements for operator's control positions.

5.5 Cystoscopic Installations

In cystoscopic procedures, the direction of the useful beam is generally at the floor or at one wall. Therefore, a primary protective barrier[15] is required for the floor and for the one wall. Only secondary protective barriers are required for the ceiling and other wall areas not exposed to the useful beam. See Section 5.3.2 for operator's control station protection requirements.

5.6 Surgical Suites

Structural shielding *shall* be provided when radiographic procedures are routinely performed in the operating rooms. If the workload is low, masonry building construction may provide sufficient shielding. It is often advisable to provide a primary protective barrier which will allow personnel to remain in the room during radiographic exposures. Furthermore, special electrical safety requirements are necessary for x-ray equipment used in the presence of explosive gases[16].

5.7 "Special Procedure" Installations

Special procedure rooms are used for cardiovascular radiology, neuroradiology and tomography and differ from conventional diagnostic rooms only in terms of the auxiliary equipment required. In general, the workload is limited by the time consumed in associated non-radiologic procedures and the collection of physiologic and hemodynamic data. The methods for determining the shielding requirements are the same as those for conventional radiographic installations. See Section 5.3.2 for operator's control station protection requirements.

---

[15] The primary protective barrier does not necessarily have to extend over the entire floor or wall; it may be limited to the area exposed to the useful beam plus a suitable margin of at least 30 cm (12 inches).

[16] Detailed information may be obtained from Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., 207 East Ohio Street, Chicago, Illinois 60611.

6. Therapy Installations[17]

6.1 General

There is considerable variation in the shielding requirements for therapy installations due to the wide range of energies and different types of equipment used. Careful planning may result in appreciable savings, particularly in the megavoltage range where the shielding is very costly. Provision for future requirements may prevent subsequent serious inconvenience and expensive alterations. This consideration is important because of the trend toward higher energies and greater workloads.

6.1.1 *Location*. Operational efficiency and initial cost, as well as feasibility of future expansion, should be considered when locating a therapy installation. Proximity to adjunct facilities, ready access for in-patients and out-patients, and consolidation of all therapeutic radiological services, however, may be more important than construction cost. For bottom floor rooms below grade, the reduction in shielding costs for floors and outside walls should be weighed against the expense of excavation, watertight sealing and of providing access. For rooms on or above grade, the outside walls and especially windows usually require shielding if nearby areas are occupiable; additional structural support may be required for heavy equipment and for shielding floors, walls, and ceilings.

6.1.2 *Provision for Future Needs*. Cost and inconvenience of future alterations may be reduced by providing extra rooms initially or by allowing for future enlargement of rooms to accommodate replacement equipment of greater size, higher energy, and with increased workload. If the installation is on an upper floor, room enlargement or contiguous expansion may be impossible. If on the ground floor, expansion onto the surrounding grounds may be most economical, requiring shielding only for walls, and possibly the ceiling, without floor shielding. Expansion over an occupied area may require extra structural support and floor shielding. Expansion underground may require additional excavation, possibly with relocation of sewerage and other services.

---

[17] See Section 7 for brachytherapy.

Future need for additional services (electrical, water, vacuum, oxygen) *should* be considered during initial planning.

6.1.3 *Size of Treatment Room*. The desirable size of a treatment room depends upon the type of the therapy equipment, the type of patient (ambulatory only or including bed patients), and the use of special equipment for research and teaching. Making the room larger than necessary may permit the installation of additional ancillary equipment, or replacement of the original therapy equipment by a larger unit requiring more shielding. However, larger rooms cost more to build, require more walking for the staff, and encourage use for extraneous purposes.

6.1.4 *Access to Treatment Room*. A shielded door opening directly into the treatment room is most satisfactory when protection requirements are moderate. For megavoltage installations, a door with adequate shielding which permits direct access to the treatment room may weigh several tons and require an expensive motor drive. When such doors offer the only access to the room, at least one *shall* be provided with auxiliary means for being opened in case of power failure or mechanical breakdown.

A maze which allows only multiple scattered radiation to reach the door will usually provide an overall economy by greatly reducing the shielding requirements for the door. However, a maze requires more floor space, and reduces the convenience of access, especially for stretchers and equipment.

Height and width of doorways, elevators, and mazes must be adequate to permit delivery of equipment into treatment rooms, unless other entry is available. Gamma-ray beam therapy installations also require access for replacement sources in large, heavy shipping containers.

6.1.5 *Interlocks and Warning Signals*. Effective means *shall* be provided to prevent access to the treatment room during exposure. For installations of 150 kV or higher, each access door to the treatment room *shall* be provided with a "fail-safe" interlock. It is recommended that the interlock system be so designed that the failure of any one component will not jeopardize the safety of the system, e.g., the use of series-connected double switch assemblies at access doors, and dual interlock relays. If an access door is opened when the machine is "ON", the interlock *shall* cause the irradiation to be terminated. It *shall* then be possible to restore the machine to full operation *only* from the control panel.

For megavoltage or gamma-ray beam therapy installations, see Section 8.1.7 regarding warning light requirements.

6.1.6 *Communication with Patient*. The operator *shall* be able to view the patient and the control panel from the same protected position. Direct window viewing is used in most superficial and orthovoltage installations. For megavoltage installations the cost of the high density glass and its lead frame may be significant. Indirect viewing by means of mirrors is more economical but may be less satisfactory.

Closed circuit television provides considerable flexibility, as both camera and display (monitor) can be located for maximum convenience[18]. Disadvantages include the need for auxiliary viewing in case of television equipment failure, and the cost of maintenance.

Means for audible communication between the patient and control room *shall* be provided (e.g., voice, buzzer).

When light localization of treatment portals is used, means for adjusting the light level in the room *should* be provided both in the treatment room and at the control panel.

6.2 X-Ray Installations of Less Than 500 kV

The term "grenz-ray therapy" is used to describe treatment with very soft x rays produced at potentials below 20 kV. Special structural shielding is usually not necessary because the ordinary building construction offers adequate protection against this low energy radiation. The operator and other persons (except the patient) *should not* be in the treatment room, and *shall not* be exposed to the unattenuated useful beam.

The term "contact therapy" is used to describe very short source-skin distance irradiation of accessible lesions, usually employing potentials of 40 to 50 kV. Generally, structural shielding is not required when a source-skin distance of 2.0 cm, or less, is employed, because of the short treatment time, i.e., low workload.

The term "superficial therapy" is used to describe treatment with x rays produced at potentials ranging from 50 to 150 kV, and rooms used for this purpose require structural shielding. The control station need not be outside the therapy room. If a protective screen is used to protect the operator, it *shall* be anchored. Viewing *shall* be through a protective window, or by indirect means. The barriers *should* be an integral part of the building.

[18] Therapy equipment control panels and television displays for several facilities may be juxtaposed; several cameras may be used to view the patient from different angles; a zoom lens may be installed for patient close-up views; a pan-tilt mechanism for the camera may be operated from the control panel to view any portion of the treatment room; and additional displays may be located elsewhere.

The term "orthovoltage therapy" (deep therapy) is used to describe treatment with x rays produced at potentials ranging from 150 to 500 kV. The control station *shall* be outside the therapy room[19]. Interlocks *shall* be provided for access doors (see Section 6.1.5). Restricting the beam orientation will limit the area requiring primary protective barriers to that which can be struck by the useful beam plus a suitable margin[20]. All primary protective barriers *shall* be designed for a use factor of at least 1/16. Mechanical or electrical means *shall* be provided to prevent the useful beam from striking secondary protective barriers.

6.3 X-Ray Installations of 0.5 to 10 MV (Megavoltage or Supervoltage)

Primary protective barriers for megavoltage installations will usually be of concrete several feet thick, or the equivalent. Therefore, to ensure economical construction, careful consideration of room location, beam orientation, and use factor is necessary.

Restricting the beam orientation will limit the area requiring primary protective barriers to that which can be struck by the useful beam plus a suitable margin[20]. In the design of primary protective barriers, due consideration *should* be given to possible future changes in techniques which may increase the use factor. The use factor *shall not* be assumed to be less than 1/16. Mechanical or electrical means *shall* be provided to prevent the useful beam from striking secondary protective barriers.

When the room is below grade, the possibility of beam orientation toward the ground surface should be considered. The upper edge of the largest projected beam *should* be far enough below the surface to prevent significant scattered radiation from reaching the surface.

Protective type source housings for megavoltage equipment frequently provide more shielding than the recommended minimum (see NCRP Report No. 33 [9]). Unless it is established that such extra shielding is present, the structural shielding design *shall* be based on the assumption that only the recommended minimum is provided. If pertinent data on leakage radiation are available, however, appreciable reduction in secondary barrier requirements may be possible. Unless the leakage is reasonably uniform in all directions, data for many directions (and planes) are necessary, and all possible beam orientations *should* be considered.

---

[19] The control station may be located in a booth within the room if the door, walls, and ceiling of the booth are adequately shielded, and if interlocks are provided for the door between the booth and the treatment room, as well as for other access door(s) to the treatment room.

[20] A primary protective barrier that does not extend over an entire wall (floor or ceiling) *should* include an extended margin beyond the maximum projected beam size to guard against misalignment of the beam. Consideration should also be given to forward small angle scatter from the patient, etc., for which the usual secondary barriers may be inadequate. The width of the margin will depend upon the room dimensions, type and location of equipment, and the energy of the radiation. For an orthovoltage therapy installation with an average size treatment room, a 30 cm (12 inches) margin is usually adequate.

When the electrons are not properly directed and/or focused on the target, they may strike other parts of the equipment. In such cases, there may be a substantial increase in the leakage radiation. This possibility *should* be considered in the shielding design and in the requirements for monitoring.

It is usually difficult to treat more than fifty patients with one machine in an eight hour day [see Table 2 (Appendix C)]. If special arrangements are made to increase the workload, such as twin treatment carts which can be alternated, shielding must be correspondingly increased. If more than one work shift is used to increase the utilization of the equipment, added shielding for controlled areas will not be required unless the workload *per shift* is increased. Added shielding, however, may be required for nearby non-controlled areas.

The control station *shall* be located outside the treatment room.

Interlocks and warning lights *shall* be provided (see Sections 6.1.5 and 8.1). The output, particularly from equipment designed to permit extraction of the electron beam, may be so high that a person who is accidentally in the treatment room when the machine is turned "ON" may receive an excessive exposure during the time required to reach an access door. This hazard can be reduced by having "cut-off" or "panic" buttons at appropriate positions about the treatment room, which, when pressed, will cause the irradiation to be terminated. This subject will be dealt with in greater detail in a forthcoming NCRP report [27].

Induced radioactivity in the air and treatment room is negligible for installations operating at up to 10 MV[21].

Ozone production is negligible during x-ray or gamma-ray beam therapy. However, some megavoltage equipment also permits electron beam therapy which may result in significant ozone production, and consideration *should* be given to this possible hazard (see NCRP Report No. 51 [27]).

---

[21] The target of some megavoltage equipment may become sufficiently radioactive to present a hazard if handled during the servicing of the equipment. Therefore, a survey should be performed before servicing the equipment in the vicinity of the source.

When megavoltage equipment is provided with a beam interceptor, pertinent recommendations of Section 6.4 apply.

6.4 Gamma-Ray Beam Therapy Installations (Teletherapy)

The two nuclides most commonly used for gamma-ray beam therapy are cobalt-60 and cesium-137. Since their photon energies are in the MeV range, the considerations of Section 6.3 apply with only limited additions. While detailed discussion of the design of gamma-ray beam therapy equipment is not pertinent to this report (see NCRP Report No. 33 [9]), certain design features of the equipment may affect structural shielding requirements. When a room is planned for a specific type of equipment, the structural shielding design will be most appropriate if adequate data are available concerning:

(a) possible orientations of unattenuated useful beam and possible beam orientations with beam interceptor, if present,
(b) leakage radiation of source housing in "ON" condition,
(c) attenuation of the useful beam and scattered radiation by the beam interceptor, if present,
(d) minimum angle through which radiation is scattered from isocenter without attenuation by the beam interceptor, if present,
(e) source-axis distance for isocentric equipment.

With gamma-ray beam equipment utilizing an isocentric mounting, the counter-weight is frequently designed to serve also as a beam interceptor in order to reduce the structural shielding requirements. When a beam interceptor is provided, it *should* transmit not more than 0.1 percent of the useful beam[22]. It also *should* reduce, by the same factor, the radiation scattered by the patient through an angle of up to 30 degrees from the isocenter. Unless it is established that the beam interceptor attenuates radiation scattered more than 30 degrees, the computation of radiation barrier thickness *should* be based on the assumption that there is no interceptor attenuation beyond 30 degrees (see Section 4.2.1 (f) of NCRP Report No. 33 [9]).

Some gamma-ray beam equipment is made with the counterweight not intercepting the useful beam, and, therefore, not significantly reducing structural shielding requirements.

---

[22] Greater transmission is acceptable provided the manufacturer's specifications indicate the actual value so that allowance can be made for it in the design of the structural shielding.

In some models the source housing is designed to swivel the center of the useful beam away from the center of the beam interceptor. If the equipment has this feature, additional structural shielding is usually required. Electrical or mechanical means *shall* be provided to prevent irradiation when the useful beam is directed toward a barrier which does not have the additional thickness required by the absence of the beam interceptor.

7. Brachytherapy[23]

Brachytherapy is a method of radiation therapy in which sealed gamma or beta sources are utilized to irradiate tissue at distances of up to a few centimeters either by surface, intracavity, or interstitial application. The sources most commonly used are in the form of metallic capsules (tubes), needles and seeds (cells) for interstitial, intracavity and surface use and in the form of applicators or plaques specifically designed for surface application. The sources usually are radium-226, radon-222, cobalt-60, gold-198 or iridium-192, although any radioactive material with appropriate radiation energy, half-life and physical properties could be used (see Table 28, Appendix C). With this method of treatment, structural shielding alone is insufficient to ensure adequate protection. Proper operating procedures are of prime importance.

In general, local shielding rather than structural shielding is preferable in protection against radiation from brachytherapy sources. When in storage, the sources *shall* be so shielded that individuals and radiation-sensitive objects in the vicinity will be adequately protected. Occasionally a shielded storage safe will require supplementary structural shielding if it is placed against a wall immediately adjacent to a non-controlled area.

Where it is necessary to locate a storage room or a workroom for brachytherapy sources close to a room in which low-level radiation counting equipment is used, the intervening walls may require structural shielding. As in the case of all relatively high energy radiation (in excess of about 0.3 MeV), concrete shielding is usually more advantageous than lead, unless space or weight is a critical consideration.

Table 7–1 shows the transmission factor, B, for various sources and for different distances. The factor B may be employed to determine the required thickness of the shielding material [Figures 11, 12, or 13 (Appendix D)].

When a large number of brachytherapy sources are located in a storage safe, the exact radiation levels at the outside of the safe are

---

[23] See NCRP Report No. 40 [10] for an extensive discussion of protection in brachytherapy.

TABLE 7-1—*Protective barrier transmission factor (B) per curie for 2.5 mR per hour (corresponding to 100 mR per 40 hours weekly exposure)*

Distance m	^{60}Co	^{226}Ra	^{192}Ir	^{137}Cs	^{198}Au
0.5	0.00048	0.00076	0.00114	0.00188	0.0027
1	0.00192	0.00303	0.00455	0.0075	0.0107
1.5	0.0043	0.0068	0.0102	0.0169	0.024
2	0.0077	0.012	0.0182	0.0301	0.043
2.5	0.012	0.019	0.028	0.047	0.067
3	0.0173	0.027	0.0404	0.068	0.096

Notes: (a) Applying the appropriate value of B, the necessary thickness of shielding material may be obtained from Fig. 11, 12, or 13 (Appendix D).

(b) If protection is required for non-occupational exposure, add one tenth value layer thickness for the shielding material chosen.

(c) For quantities of material other than a curie, the permissible transmission (B) should be adjusted in inverse proportion.

Example:

The required barrier thickness for a radiation worker at a 2-meter distance from a 50 mCi (0.05 Ci) cobalt-60 source is determined from:

$$B = 0.0077 \text{ (from table)} \times \frac{1 \text{ Ci}}{0.05 \text{ Ci}} = 0.154$$

For concrete, the value of B for cobalt-60 indicates a thickness (Figure 12, Appendix D) of 21 cm of concrete. To protect persons other than radiation workers, one tenth value layer of concrete or 20.6 cm would be added, totaling about 42 cm.

difficult to calculate because of self-absorption and the various thicknesses of shielding materials through which the radiation from different sources must pass. However, in most cases, the radiation levels may be approximated by assuming that the sources are located at the center of the safe.

When brachytherapy sources are in use, the protection of nearby persons is generally effected by means of local shielding such as L-blocks, lead bricks and shielded transport containers. Since the shielding of transport containers is often marginal, supplementary shielding *should* be provided if they are used also for storage near occupied areas.

In general, structural shielding is not needed to protect against radiation from brachytherapy sources during the treatment of patients. In most cases, the distance to occupied areas is sufficient to reduce the radiation to adequate levels (see Table 29, Appendix C). Structural shielding, however, is recommended where a large number of brachytherapy cases are involved (see NCRP Report No. 37 [11]). Concrete, rather than lead, is usually the preferred material.

Additional shielding may be required if radiation sensitive instruments or film are in the vicinity of brachytherapy sources.

8. Radiation Protection Survey[24]

8.1 General

All new installations and existing installations not previously surveyed *shall* have a radiation protection survey performed by or under the direction of a *qualified expert*.

The radiation protection survey may include visual inspection during construction, followed by radiation scanning and measurement and evaluation. Approval or disapproval *should* be judged on the basis of compliance with the applicable NCRP recommendations and pertinent federal, state and local regulations.

All occupiable areas near a radiation installation *shall* be evaluated for the purpose of determining whether or not any person is likely to receive more than the applicable MPD. In the case of installations operating below 150 kV, radiation measurements *shall* be made unless there is sufficient information to determine that no person can receive more than one quarter of the applicable MPD. For installations capable of operating at 150 kV, or above, radiation measurements *shall* be made in all cases.

If the survey shows that supplementary shielding is required, a resurvey *shall* be performed after its installation. In addition, a resurvey *shall* be made after every change which might decrease the radiation protection significantly.

The testing of safety devices such as door interlock switches, limit switches for beam orientation, mechanical stops, etc. *shall* be performed after the installation is completed, using the radiation equipment for which the facility has been designed. These devices *shall* also be checked periodically.

The testing of the beam control mechanism *shall* include a demonstration that with the beam in the "ON" condition:

(1) The action of opening the door to the radiation room breaks the

---

[24] For further information see NCRP Report No. 33 [9] and the forthcoming NCRP report on instrumentation and monitoring methods for radiation protection. For dental installations see NCRP Report No. 35 [7].

interlock circuit and causes the useful beam to go to the "OFF" condition, and

(2) the beam does not turn "ON" again when the interlock circuit is restored until the equipment is manually activated from the control panel.

The presence of appropriate warning signs and devices *shall* be determined. Emergency action procedures for gamma-ray beam therapy installations *shall* be posted near the control panel. A red warning signal light (energized only when the useful beam is "ON") *shall* be located: (a) on the control panel, and (b) near the entrance(s) to megavoltage or gamma-ray beam therapy rooms in addition to other appropriate locations in the treatment room (see NCRP Report No. 33 [9]).

"Radiation Area" warning signs *should* be posted in all areas wherein a person, if he were continuously present, could receive an exposure in excess of 5 mR in any one hour or 100 mR in any 5 consecutive days but less than 100 mR in any one hour. Appropriate "High Radiation Area" warning signs *shall* be posted at the entrance to any area wherein a person could receive an exposure of 100 mR or more in any one hour. Exceptions to the posting requirements for "High Radiation Area" signs may be permitted in locations visible to patients when such signs may be a source of apprehension, provided the personnel occupying the areas are otherwise informed of the radiation levels to which they could be exposed, and entrance to the area is strictly controlled.

8.2 Inspection During Construction

Visual inspection during construction is advantageous in ensuring compliance with specifications and revealing faulty materials or workmanship which can be remedied more economically at this stage than later. Inspection *should* include, where applicable:

(a) determination of lead or concrete thickness;

(b) determination of concrete density from samples which were taken at the time of casting of concrete and that "honeycombing" or settling of heavy aggregate does not occur;

(c) observation of the degree of overlap of lead sheets or between lead and other barrier material;

(d) determination of lead glass thickness, density, and number of sheets in each view window;

(e) inspection of the lead shielding behind switch boxes, lock as-

semblies, etc., recessed in protective barriers;
(f) inspection of location and action of door interlock switches and warning lights;
(g) verification of specified lead dimensions in baffles or in barriers.

8.3 Radiation Scanning and Measurement

Radiation scanning is a screening procedure involving qualitative measurements to determine the location of radiation fields which may require further quantitative measurement for protection evaluation. Particular attention *should* be paid to the detection and location of defects in the shielding construction.

For radiation scanning of a protective barrier a Geiger-Mueller, scintillation or other sensitive rate meter with a fast response *should* be used. The use of an audible indicator with the meter will save considerable time during the scan. Where scanning indicates that a quantitative measurement is required a calibrated ion chamber or other instrument having small energy dependence *should* be used to determine the exposure rate in the areas being surveyed. The survey results at the point of interest *should* be expressed as milliroentgens per 100 milliampere-seconds for radiographic installations and as milliroentgens per hour for therapeutic and fluoroscopic installations.

Radiation measurement involves a quantitative determination of radiation levels; it *shall* be performed when scanning reveals radiation fields of significant levels. Such quantitative measurements *shall* be made with properly calibrated radiation measuring devices.

In the choice of instruments used for the measurement the following factors *should* be considered: (a) calibration and stability, (b) sensitivity, (c) energy dependence, (d) rate dependence, (e) size of sensitive volume, (f) time constant, and (g) directional dependence.

For the determination of the adequacy of protective barriers, measurements *shall* be made with those beam orientations and field sizes used in patient treatment and diagnosis which result in the greatest exposure at the point of measurement[25].

For the determination of the adequacy of primary protective barriers, measurements *shall* be made without a phantom, using the maximum field size.

[25] It is reasonable to assume that persons will not remain within 30 cm (12 inches) of the barrier.

For the determination of the adequacy of secondary protective barriers, measurements *shall* be made employing a suitable phantom to simulate the patient. The near surface of the phantom *should* be placed at the usual source-skin distance.

Certain radiation protective barriers may be tested by the use of a radiation source other than the final one to be employed in the installation. For example, a mobile x-ray unit operated at an appropriate potential may be used for the determination of the radiation attenuation of the barriers for a radiographic or fluoroscopic x-ray installation. The use of a high energy gamma-ray source such as cobalt-60 is inappropriate for testing a lead barrier which is designed for a radiographic or fluoroscopic installation.

8.4 Report of Radiation Protection Survey

The qualified expert *shall* report his findings in writing. The report *shall* indicate whether or not the installation is in compliance with the applicable NCRP recommendations and pertinent governmental regulations.

Exposure rates in nearby occupiable areas *shall* be indicated.

The evaluation of the survey results *shall* be based upon the applicable MPD. Consideration *shall* be given to the type of area (controlled or non-controlled) and the degree of occupancy, the use factor and workload in evaluating the radiation protection of the installation.

If the survey indicates that the applicable MPD could be exceeded, taking into account the expected workload, use factor and occupancy, the qualified expert *shall* recommend appropriate corrective measures. These measures may include an increase in barrier thickness; reduction in use factor and/or workload; changes in operating techniques, equipment, mechanical or electrical restrictions of the beam orientation; or restriction of occupancy.

The report *should* indicate whether a resurvey is necessary after corrections have been made.

A copy of the report *should* be retained by the owner or by the person in charge of the installation. Any recommended limitations of occupancy, operating techniques and/or workload *should* be posted near the control panel.

Written records and data of the survey *should* be retained for a period of at least 5 years by the qualified expert who performed or directed the survey.

APPENDIX A

Definitions

The following definitions apply to certain terms used in this report. For more rigorous definitions of some of these terms, see ICRU Report 19 [12].

absorbed dose: The mean energy imparted to matter by ionizing radiation per unit mass of matter. The special unit of absorbed dose is the rad. One rad equals 10^{-2} joule per kilogram (100 ergs per gram).

activity: The number of spontaneous nuclear transformations (a change of nuclide or an isomeric transition) occurring in a given quantity of material per unit time. See curie.

attenuation: The reduction of exposure rate upon passage of radiation through matter. This report is concerned with broad beam attenuation, i.e., that occurring when the field area is large at the barrier and the point of measurement is near the exit surface.

barrier: See protective barrier.

brachytherapy: A method of radiation therapy in which an encapsulated source is utilized to deliver gamma or beta radiation at a distance up to a few centimeters either by surface, intracavitary or interstitial application.

collimator zone: The portion of the source housing of a gamma-ray beam apparatus which includes the beam defining mechanism.

concrete equivalence: The thickness of concrete of density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}) affording the same attenuation, under specified conditions, as the material in question.

constant potential: Unidirectional potential (or voltage) which has little, or no, periodic variation.

controlled area: A defined area in which the exposure of persons to radiation is under the supervision of a Radiation Protection Supervisor. (This implies that a controlled area is one that requires control of access, occupancy and working conditions for radiation protection purposes.)

curie (Ci): The special unit of activity equal to a nuclear transformation rate of 3.7×10^{10} per second (exactly).

diagnostic-type protective tube housing: An x-ray tube housing so constructed that the leakage radiation measured at a distance of 1 meter from the source cannot exceed 100 mR in 1 hour when the tube is operated at its maximum continuous rated current for the maximum rated tube potential.

dose equivalent (*H*): A quantity used for radiation protection purposes that expresses on a common scale for all radiations the irradiation incurred by exposed persons. It is defined as the product of the absorbed dose in rads and certain modifying factors. The special unit of dose equivalent is the rem. (For radiation protection purposes of this report, the dose equivalent in rems may be considered numerically equivalent to the absorbed dose in rads and the exposure in roentgens.)

dose rate: Dose per unit time.

exposure: A measure of x or gamma radiation based upon the ionization produced in air by x or gamma rays. The special unit of exposure is the roentgen. (For radiation protection purposes of this report, the number of roentgens may be considered to be numerically equivalent to the number of rads or rems.)

exposure rate: The exposure per unit time.

filter, filtration: Material in the useful beam which absorbs preferentially the less penetrating radiation.

gamma-ray beam therapy: Therapeutic irradiation with collimated gamma rays.

half-life, radioactive: Time for the activity of any particular radionuclide to be reduced to one-half its initial value.

half-value layer *(HVL)*: Thickness of a specified substance which, when introduced into the path of a given beam of radiation, reduces the exposure rate by one-half.

installation: Radiation sources with associated equipment, and the space in which they are located.

interlock: A device which automatically causes a reduction of the exposure rate upon entry by personnel into a high radiation area. Alternatively, an interlock may prevent entry into a high radiation area.

kilovolt (kV): A unit of electrical potential difference equal to 1000 volts.

kilovolt constant potential: The potential difference in kilovolts of a constant potential generator.

kilovolt peak: The crest value in kilovolts of the potential difference of a pulsating potential generator. When only one-half of the wave is used, the value refers to the useful half of the cycle.

lead equivalence: The thickness of lead affording the same attenuation, under specified conditions, as the material in question.

leakage radiation: See radiation.

maximum permissible dose equivalent (MPD): For radiation protection purposes, maximum dose equivalents that persons shall be allowed to receive in a stated period of time (See Section 1 and Table 1, Appendix C.) For radiation protection purposes of this report, the dose equivalent in rems may be considered numerically equal to the absorbed dose in rads and the exposure in roentgens.

million electron volts (MeV): Energy equal to that acquired by a particle with one electronic charge in being accelerated through a potential difference of one million volts (one MV).

millicurie (mCi): One-thousandth of a curie.

milliroentgen (mR): One-thousandth of a roentgen.

noncontrolled area: Any space not meeting the definition of controlled area.

normalized output ($\dot{X}_n$): The exposure rate (in roentgens per minute) per unit target current (in milliamperes) and measured at one meter from the source, after transmission through the barrier. The unit is $Rm^2/(mA\ min)$.

occupancy factor (T): The factor by which the workload should be multiplied to correct for the degree of occupancy of the area in question while the source is "ON".

occupational exposure: The exposure of an individual to ionizing radiation in the course of employment in which the individual's normal duties or authorized activities necessarily involve the likelihood of exposure to ionizing radiation.

occupiable area: Any room or other space, indoors or outdoors, that is likely to be occupied by any person, either regularly or periodically during the course of his work, habitation or recreation and in which an ionizing radiation field exists because of radiation sources in the vicinity.

owner: A person, organization, or institution having title to or administrative control over one or more installations or sources of radiation.

phantom: As used in this report, for radiation protection purposes, a volume of tissue-equivalent material used to simulate the absorption and scattering characteristics of the patient's body or of a portion thereof.

primary beam: See radiation: useful beam.

primary protective barrier: See protective barrier.

protective barrier: A barrier of radiation attenuating material(s) used to reduce radiation exposure.

primary protective barrier: Barrier sufficient to attenuate the useful beam to the required degree.

secondary protective barrier: Barrier sufficient to attenuate the stray radiation to the required degree.

protective source housing: An enclosure, for a gamma-beam therapy source, so constructed that the leakage radiation does not exceed specified limits with the source in the "OFF" and in the "ON" conditions.

(a) Beam "OFF" condition. The housing *shall* be so constructed that at one meter from the source, the maximum and average exposure rates do not exceed 10 mR h^{-1} and 2 mR h^{-1}, respectively, when the beam control mechanism is in the "OFF" position.

(b) Beam "ON" condition. The leakage radiation measured at one meter from the source *shall not* exceed 0.1 percent of the useful beam exposure rate at that distance when the beam control mechanism is in the "ON" position, except for the portion of the housing which includes the collimator zone. This limit, however, does not apply to source housings when the leakage radiation at one meter is less than 1 R h^{-1}, nor does it apply to apparatus used exclusively for whole-body irradiation.

qualified expert: With reference to *radiation protection,* a person having the knowledge and training to advise regarding radiation protection needs, to measure ionizing radiation, and to evaluate safety techniques (for example, persons having relevant certification from the American Board of Radiology or American Board of Health Physics, or those having equivalent qualifications). With reference to *shielding design,* a person having particular knowledge and training in the field of medical x-ray and gamma-ray shielding.

rad: A special unit of absorbed dose equal to 10^{-2} J kg^{-1} (100 ergs g^{-1}).

radiation (ionizing): Any electromagnetic or particulate radiation capable of producing ions, directly or indirectly, by interaction with matter. In this report "radiation" refers to x rays and gamma rays.

leakage radiation: All radiation coming from within the source or tube housing except the useful beam. (Note: Leakage radiation includes the portion of the direct radiation not absorbed by the protective source or tube housing as well as the scattered radiation produced within the housing.)

scattered radiation: Radiation that, during passage through matter, has been deviated in direction. (It may have been modified also by a decrease in energy.)

stray radiation: The sum of leakage and scattered radiation.

useful beam: Radiation which passes through the window, aperture, cone or other collimating device of the source housing. Sometimes called "primary beam."

radiation protection supervisor: The person directly responsible for radiation protection. (See Section 7.2 of NCRP Report No. 33 [9].)

radiation protection survey: An evaluation of the radiation safety in and around an installation.

rem: The unit of dose equivalent. For radiation protection purposes of this report which covers only x and gamma radiation, the number of rems may be considered equivalent to the number of rads of absorbed dose in tissue or to the number of roentgens of exposure.

Rhm (deprecated): Roentgens per hour at one meter from the effective center of the source (target). In gamma-ray beam therapy, this distance is measured to the nearest surface of the source as its effective center generally is not known.

roentgen (R): A special unit of exposure equal to 2.58×10^{-4} coulomb per kilogram of air.

scattered radiation: See radiation.

secondary protective barrier: See protective barrier.

shall: *Shall* indicates a recommendation that is necessary to meet the currently accepted standards of radiation protection.

should: *Should* indicates an advisory recommendation that is to be applied when practicable.

shutter: (1) In beam therapy equipment, a device fixed to the x-ray or gamma-ray source housing to intercept the useful beam. (2) In diagnostic equipment, an adjustable device used to collimate the useful beam.

source: A discrete amount of radioactive material or the target (focal spot) of the x-ray tube.

  sealed source: A radioactive source sealed in a container or having a bonded cover, in which the container or cover has sufficient mechanical strength to prevent contact with and dispersion of the radioactive material under the conditions of use and wear for which it was designed.

source housing: See protective source housing.

source-surface distance ***(SSD)*:** The distance, measured along the central ray, from the center of the front surface of the source (x-ray focal spot or sealed radioactive source) to the surface of the irradiated object.

stray radiation: See radiation.

survey: See radiation protection survey.

teletherapy: See gamma-ray beam therapy.

tenth-value layer ***(TVL)*:** Thickness of a specified substance which, when introduced into the path of a given beam of radiation, reduces the exposure rate to one-tenth.

therapeutic-type protective tube housing:

(a) For x-ray therapy equipment not capable of operating at peak tube potentials of 500 kV or above, the following definition applies: An x-ray tube housing so constructed that the leakage radiation at a distance of one meter from the source does not exceed one roentgen in an hour when the tube is operated at its maximum rated continuous current for the maximum rated tube potential.

(b) For x-ray therapy equipment capable of operating at peak tube potentials of 500 kV or above, the following definition applies: An x-ray tube housing so constructed that the leakage radiation at a distance of one meter from the source does not exceed either one roentgen in an hour or 0.1 percent of the useful beam exposure rate at one meter from the source, whichever is the greater, when the machine is operated at its maximum rated continuous current for the maximum rated accelerating potential.

(c) In either case, small areas of reduced protection are acceptable provided the average reading over any 100 cm^2 area at one meter distance from the source does not exceed the values given above.

use factor (beam direction factor) (U): Fraction of the time during which the radiation under consideration is directed at a particular barrier.

useful beam: See radiation.

user: Any individual who personally utilizes or manipulates a source of radiation.

workload ***(W)*****:** The degree of use of an x-ray or gamma-ray source. For x-ray equipment operating below 4 MV, the weekly workload is usually expressed in milliampere minutes. For gamma-ray beam therapy sources, and for x-ray equipment operating at 4 MV or above, the workload is usually stated in terms of the weekly exposure of the useful beam at one meter from the source and is expressed in roentgens (Rm^2).

APPENDIX B

Computation of Barrier Requirements

The basic principles of shielding design are discussed in Section 2. Using these principles and the tables in Appendix C, it is possible to determine directly the barrier requirements for most situations. For other conditions it is necessary to compute the required thicknesses using the graphs of Appendix D. The required steps are shown below.

B.1 Computation of Thickness of Primary Protective Barrier

The curves of Figures 1 through 5 (Appendix D) indicate the attenuation of x rays in a lead or concrete barrier as a function of the barrier thickness. In each graph, the quotient of the exposure at one meter from the target and the workload appears as the ordinate with the value of the weekly workload, W, given in milliampere minutes. It may be noted that the curves are strongly dependent upon the barrier material and the kilovoltage of the radiation. Thus, there is a characteristic curve for each kilovoltage in each type of barrier material.[26]

The weekly exposure, X_u, from the useful beam at the point of interest, which is at a distance, d_{pri}, from the source, is related to the exposure rate at one meter, $\dot{X}_u$, by the following equation

$$X_u = \frac{\dot{X}_u t}{(d_{pri})^2} \tag{1}$$

---

[26] The question sometimes arises as to whether a family of curves is required for a given kilovoltage in order to provide data for different amounts of filtration. For ordinates in terms of roentgens per milliampere minute, the curves for a range of practical filtrations at a given x-ray potential essentially coincide at other than very small thicknesses of the barrier materials. Thus, a family of curves is not necessary for practical protection design calculations.

TABLE B-1—*Quantities used*[a] *in calculations of barrier thickness*

Quantity[b]	Symbol	Units
Weekly design exposure rate[c]	P	R
Weekly workload:		
X-ray equipment with current meter	W	mA min[d]
Megavoltage and gamma sources	W	R at 1 m[e]
Use factor	U	–
Occupancy factor	T	–
Distance from radiation source:		
To person to be protected	d_{pri}, d_{sec}	m
To scatterer	d_{sca}	m
Field area	F	cm^2
Normalized output	$\dot{X}_{\mathrm{n}}$	R per mA min at 1 m
Exposure rate at 1 meter from the source of the:		
Useful beam	$\dot{X}_{\mathrm{u}}$	R per min
Leakage radiation	$\dot{X}_L$	R per min
Exposure rate at 1 meter from the scatter for:		
Scattered radiation	$\dot{X}_{\mathrm{s}}$	R per min at 1 m
Quotient of exposure at unit distance and workload	K_{ux}	R per mA min at 1 m
Transmission factor for:		
Useful beam:		
x rays	B_{ux}	–
gamma rays	B_{ug}	–
Leakage radiation:		
x rays	$\mathrm{B}_{L\mathrm{x}}$	–
gamma rays	$\mathrm{B}_{L\mathrm{g}}$	–
Scattered radiation:		
x rays	B_{sx}	–
gamma rays	B_{sg}	–
Leakage of source housing	L	R per h at 1 m
Exposure	X_{u}, X_L, X_{s}	R
Tube current	I	mA
Weekly beam ON-time	t	min
Barrier thickness:		
Primary	S_{p}	mm (lead) cm (concrete)
Secondary	S_{s}	mm (lead) cm (concrete)
Half value layer	*HVL*	mm or cm
Tenth value layer	*TVL*	mm or cm

[a] It is assumed that the acceleration potential is known for x-ray sources and that the energy is known for gamma-ray sources.

[b] See definitions in Appendix A.

[c] As this report deals with x and gamma radiation only, the number of roentgens may be considered equal to the number of rems (see Table 1 in Appendix C).

[d] This unit is used for x rays produced by potentials below 4 MV, and for higher potentials when the equipment has a target-current meter.

[e] This unit is used for all gamma-ray sources and for x rays produced by potentials of 4 to 10 MV, when the equipment does not have a target-current meter.

where t is the number of minutes of beam ON-time in a week. (See Table B-1 for a tabulation of the quantities and units used in calculation of barrier thickness.) If X_{u} is greater than the permissible weekly exposure, P, a primary barrier of sufficient thickness, S_{p}, to give a transmission factor of B_{ux} (for x rays), must be inserted into the beam between the source and the point of interest (see Figure B-1). Then,

$$P = \mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{ux}}\, X_{\mathrm{u}} = \mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{ux}}\, \frac{\dot{X}_{\mathrm{u}} t}{(d_{\mathrm{pri}})^2} \qquad (2)$$

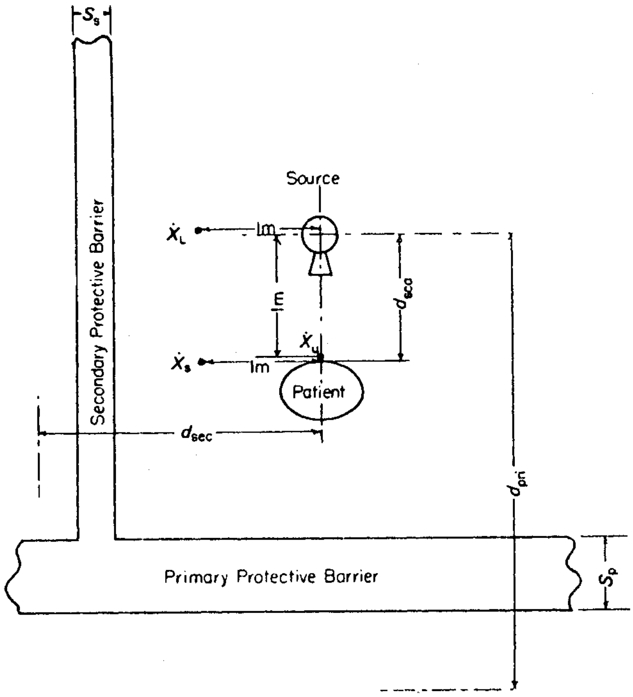


Fig. B-1. Geometry used in deriving equations for computing thickness of primary protective behavior, S_p, and of secondary protective barrier, S_s.

If we define the normalized output, $\dot{X}_n$, as the exposure rate per unit target current, I (in milliamperes), measured at one meter, then $\dot{X}_n = \dot{X}_u/I$ or $\dot{X}_u = \dot{X}_n I$. Substituting for $\dot{X}_u$ in equation 2

$$P = (B_{ux}\dot{X}_n)\frac{It}{(d_{pri})^2} \tag{3}$$

Substituting $It = W$, the weekly workload in milliampere minutes, into the above equation and rearranging terms:

$$B_{ux}\dot{X}_n = P\frac{(d_{pri})^2}{W} \tag{3a}$$

Setting the left hand side of equation 3a equal to K_{ux}, the number of roentgens per milliampere minute in a week for the useful beam normalized at one meter:

$$K_{ux} = \frac{P(d_{pri})^2}{W} \tag{3b}$$

However, in order to recognize that the primary protective barrier might be irradiated for only a fraction, U, of the total beam ON-time and that the anticipated occupancy of the point of interest may be a fraction, T, of the time which the beam is ON and the barrier protecting the point of interest is irradiated, the value of W in the denominator of equation 3b must be modified by multiplying it by the product, UT. That is,

$$K_{ux} = \frac{P(d_{pri})^2}{W\mathrm{UT}} \tag{3c}$$

from which the value of K_{ux} is computed, so that the barrier thickness, S_p, can be obtained from the appropriate curve on Figures 1–5 (Appendix D).

For gamma-ray beam equipment and for x-ray equipment which does not have a current meter, the workload, W, is expressed as roentgens in a week at one meter, and

$$\mathrm{B}_{ug} \text{ or } \mathrm{B}_{ux} = \frac{P(d_{pri})^2}{W\mathrm{UT}} \tag{4}$$

where B_{ug} is the transmission factor for the useful gamma-ray beam and B_{ux} is the transmission factor for the useful x-ray beam. The curves showing the relation between B_{ug} or B_{ux} and the required barrier thickness, S_p, are to be found in Figures 6 through 8 and 11 through 13 (Appendix D).

Example:

Determine the thickness of primary protective barrier necessary to protect a controlled area 2.1 m (7 feet) from the target of a 250 kV x-ray therapy machine, having a weekly workload of 20,000 mA min. The wall in question has a use factor of 1/4 assigned to it, and the occupancy factor of the area to be protected is unity. Then

$$\begin{aligned} P &= 0.1\ \mathrm{R} \\ d_{pri} &= 2.1\ \mathrm{m} \\ W &= 20{,}000\ \mathrm{mA\ min} \\ U &= 1/4 \\ \mathrm{T} &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in Equation (3c):

$$K_{ux} = \frac{(0.1)\ (2.1)^2}{(20{,}000)\ (1/4)(1)} = 0.000088$$

The 250 kV curves of Figures 2 and 3 (Appendix D) show that the required barrier thickness for K_{ux} is 7.9 mm of lead or 37 cm (14.7 inches) of concrete. The same values are given in Table 12 (Appendix C).

When the radiation is obliquely incident on a barrier, the required thickness of the barrier will be less than that obtained by the above calculations. The difference between these thicknesses depends on (a) the angle of obliquity, θ, between the radiation direction and the normal to the barrier, (b) the barrier material, (c) the required attenuation, and (d) the energy of the radiation. If there were no radiation scattering in the barrier material, the relation between the computed thickness, $S/\cos\theta$, and actual thickness, S, of barrier for obliquely incident radiation would be that illustrated in Figure B-2. However, for large angles of obliquity an incident photon in its scattered path may travel a thickness of less than $S/\cos\theta$ before emerging from the barrier. This effect may necessitate a thickness of barrier greater than S. For most practical situations the effect is small and can be treated as a small increase in the approximate thickness, S (see Reference 13 for more details). If the attenuation required is 1000 and the angle of obliquity is 50 degrees, the increase for concrete barriers is about 2 *HVL* for low energy photons and about 1 *HVL* for high energy photons. For angles of 60 and 70 degrees, each of the above thicknesses should be increased by one and two *HVL* respectively. For lead barriers and a required attenuation of 1000, the

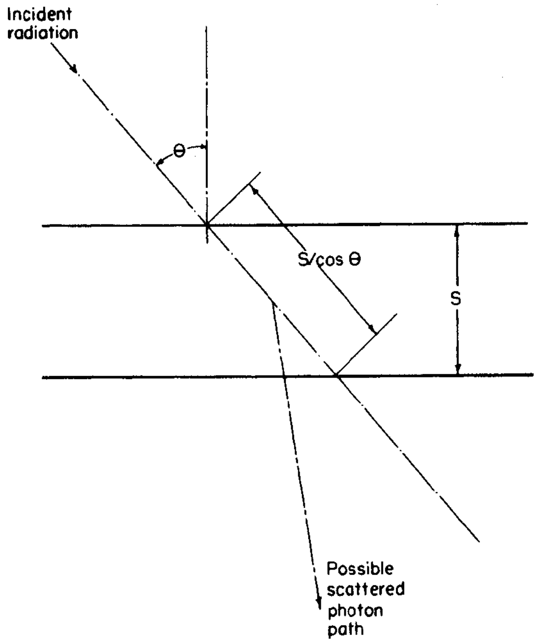


Fig. B-2 Relation between the path length, S/cos θ, of radiation incident on a barrier with an angle of obliquity, θ, and the thickness of the barrier, S.

increase is only about 1 *HVL* at 60 degrees. The above approximate determinations are for radiation incident at a single angle. If the beam is very divergent, one should not use the angle of obliquity for the central ray because some of the radiation will have a somewhat smaller angle of obliquity. Use of the minimum angle of obliquity will provide more attenuation than is required. Thus, judgment must be used in selecting the proper angle for divergent beams.

B.2 Computation of Secondary Protective Barriers

Secondary protective barriers shield against both leakage and scattered radiation. As these two types of radiation are of different qualities, it is necessary to compute the barrier thickness requirements for each separately.

B.2.1 *Barrier Against Leakage Radiation*

The protective source housing and the therapeutic-type protective tube housing for x-ray therapy equipment operating at 500 kV or above, have in their design a limitation on the amount of leakage radiation (0.1 percent of the useful beam exposure rate, $\dot{X}_u$, at one meter from the source). Thus, the weekly leakage exposure, X_L, at the point of interest, which is at a distance $d_{\rm sec}$ from the source of radiation (see Figure B-1), would be

$$X_L = \frac{0.001\ \dot{X}_u t}{(d_{\rm sec})^2} \tag{5a}$$

where t is the number of minutes of beam ON-time in a week.

Since $(\dot{X}_u)$ (t) is equal to W, in R in a week at one meter (see Section B.1),

$$X_L = \frac{0.001\ WUT}{(d_{\rm sec})^2} \tag{5b}$$

A barrier having a transmission factor, B_{Lx} or B_{Lg}, is required to reduce the weekly exposure to P. Thus

$$P = (B_{Lx})(X_L) = \frac{B_{Lx}\ (0.001\ WUT)}{(d_{\rm sec})^2} \tag{5c}$$

Since U is equal to unity for leakage radiation,

$$\mathrm{B}_{Lx}\ (\text{or } \mathrm{B}_{Lg}) = \frac{1000\,P(d_{\text{sec}})^2}{W\mathrm{T}} \qquad \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{For therapy equipment above}\\ \text{0.5 MV without target}\\ \text{current meter}\end{array}\right] \tag{5d}$$

For x-ray therapy equipment with a target current meter and operating at 500 kV and above, the workload may be expressed as milliampere minutes in a week. Since $\dot{X}_{\text{u}} = \dot{X}_{\text{n}}I$, from equation 5a

$$X_L = \frac{0.001\,\dot{X}_{\text{n}}It}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2} \tag{5e}$$

Since $It = W$ (in milliampere minutes per week) and U is equal to unity for leakage radiation, then

$$X_L = \frac{0.001\,\dot{X}_{\text{n}}W\mathrm{T}}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2} \tag{5f}$$

A barrier having a transmission factor B_{Lx} is required to reduce the weekly exposure to P. Thus

$$P = \mathrm{B}_{Lx}X_L = \mathrm{B}_{Lx}\,\frac{0.001\,\dot{X}_{\text{n}}W\mathrm{T}}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2} \tag{5g}$$

Rearranging and solving for the transmission factor

$$\mathrm{B}_{Lx} = \frac{1000\,P(d_{\text{sec}})^2}{\dot{X}_{\text{n}}W\mathrm{T}} \qquad \left[\begin{array}{l}\text{For therapy equipment above}\\ \text{0.5 MV with a target}\\ \text{current meter}\end{array}\right] \tag{5h}$$

For therapeutic-type protective tube housings of equipment operating below 500 kV, the leakage, L, is limited to 1 roentgen in an hour at 1 m from the source when the tube is operating at the maximum rated continuous tube current, I. The equivalent of equation 5a is therefore

$$X_L = \frac{1}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2}\,\frac{t}{60} \tag{5i}$$

Since $W = It$,

$$X_L = \frac{1}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2}\,\frac{W}{60I} \tag{5j}$$

and it follows that

$$\frac{P}{\mathrm{T}} = (\mathrm{B}_{Lx})(X_{Lx}) = \frac{(\mathrm{B}_{Lx})}{(d_{\text{sec}})^2}\,\frac{W}{60I} \tag{5k}$$

Rearranging equation 5k and solving for B_{Lx},

$$B_{Lx} = \frac{P(d_{\text{sec}})^2 60I}{WT} \quad \text{[Therapy below 0.5 MV]} \tag{5l}$$

For a diagnostic-type protective tube housing, where L equals 0.1 roentgen in an hour at 1 m from the source

$$B_{Lx} = \frac{P(d_{\text{sec}})^2 (600I)}{WT} \quad \text{[Diagnostic]} \tag{5m}$$

The thickness of barrier, S_L, to protect from leakage radiation at the point of interest can be computed as follows using the value of B_{Lx} or B_{Lg} together with Figure B-3 and the table of half-value layers and tenth-value layers (Table 27, Appendix C).[27] The value of B_{Lx} or B_{Lg} is entered as the ordinate of Figure B-3; the value of N or n is read on the appropriate abscissa. The leakage barrier thickness, S_L, is computed by

$$S_L = N\,(HVL) \text{ or } n\,(TVL) \tag{5n}$$

where numerical values of *HVL* or *TVL* are obtained from Table 27 (Appendix C) for the appropriate energy.

Example:

Determine the thickness of leakage protective barrier necessary to protect a controlled area 2.1 meters (7 feet) from the target of a 250 kV x-ray therapy machine having a weekly workload of 20,000 mA min. The wall in question adjoins an area with an occupancy factor of unity and the x-ray machine has a continuous tube current rating at 250 kV of 20 mA. Then

P = 0.1 R
d_{sec} = 2.1 m
W = 20,000 mA min
T = 1
I = 20 mA

Substituting in Equation (5l):

$$B_{Lx} = \frac{(0.1)\,(2.1)^2\,(60)\,(20)}{(20{,}000)\,(1)} = 0.0265$$

From Figure B-3 a transmission of 0.0265 corresponds to 5.2 *HVL*'s. From Table 27 of Appendix C, the *HVL* for 250 kV is 0.88 mm lead and 2.8 cm con-

---

[27] This procedure is valid at energies where significant buildup in the shielding material does not occur. At energies where buildup is significant, i.e., the broad beam half-value layer is greater at low attenuation than at high attenuation, shielding against leakage radiation *should* be determined using the appropriate transmission curve from Appendix D.

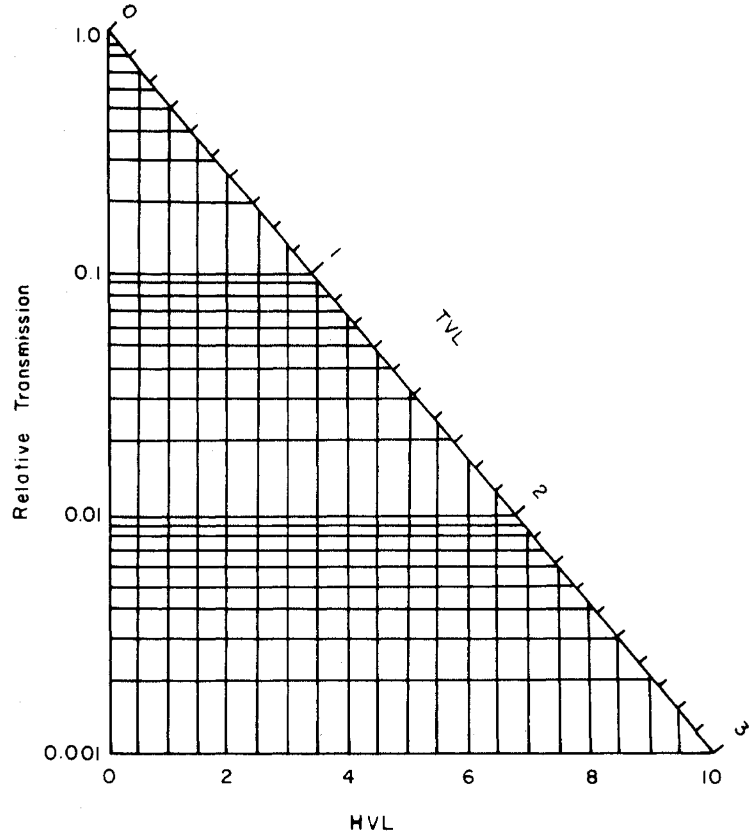


Fig. B-3. Relation between the transmission, B_{Lx} or B_{Lg}, and the number of half-value layers, N, or tenth-value layers, n.

crete. Substituting in Equation (5n), the required barrier thickness *for leakage radiation* is:

$$S_L = (5.2)\,(0.88) = 4.57 \text{ mm lead}$$
$$S_L = (5.2)\,(2.8) = 14.4 \text{ cm concrete}$$

Refer to B.2.2 for an example of the thickness of scattered radiation protective barrier and B.2.3 for an example of the total secondary protective barrier.

B.2.2 *Barrier Against Scattered Radiation*

Radiation scattered from an irradiated object has a much lower exposure rate, $\dot{X}_s$, than that of the incident radiation, $\dot{X}_u$, and usually is of lower energy. The ratio, a, of the scattered to incident exposure is a function of energy and scattering angle. The numerical values given in Table B-2 are for a field area, F, of 400 cm^2 at the phantom surface. Since the exposure rate $\dot{X}_s$, of scattered radiation, measured at one meter from a scatterer 1 m from the source is proportional to F:

$$\dot{X}_s = \mathrm{a}\cdot\dot{X}_u \frac{F}{400} \tag{6a}$$

The exposure from the scatterer, X_s, at the point of interest, which is at a distance of d_{sec} from the scatterer, is related to the scatter exposure rate at one meter, $\dot{X}_s$, by the following equation

$$X_s = \frac{\dot{X}_s t}{(d_{sec})^2} \tag{6b}$$

Substituting for $\dot{X}_s$:

$$X_s = \frac{\mathrm{a}\dot{X}_u}{(d_{sec})^2}\,\frac{Ft}{400} \tag{6c}$$

In the event that the scatterer is located at a distance (d_{sca}) from the source, equation 6c must be modified in terms of the inverse square of this source-skin distance.

$$X_s = \frac{\mathrm{a}\dot{X}_u}{(d_{sec})^2}\cdot\frac{1}{(d_{sca})^2}\cdot\frac{Ft}{400} \tag{6d}$$

Proceeding as in the derivation of Equation 3:

$$P = \mathrm{B}_{sx}\cdot X_s = \mathrm{B}_{sx}\cdot\frac{\dot{X}_n It}{(d_{sca})^2}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{a}}{(d_{sec})^2}\cdot\frac{F}{400}$$

It = WT, since U = 1 for scattered radiation; solving for ($\mathrm{B}_{sx}\cdot\dot{X}_n$), the secondary protective barrier transmission factor:

$$\mathrm{B}_{sx}\cdot\dot{X}_n = \frac{P}{\mathrm{a}W\mathrm{T}}\cdot(d_{sca})^2\cdot(d_{sec})^2\cdot\frac{400}{F} \tag{6e}$$

For x rays generated at voltages of 500 kV and below it is usually assumed that the barrier penetrating capability of scattered photons is the same as that of the useful beam. The value of $\mathrm{B}_{sx}\cdot\dot{X}_n$ can then be set equal to K_{ux}.

$$K_{ux} = \frac{P}{\mathrm{a}W\mathrm{T}}(d_{sca})^2\cdot(d_{sec})^2\cdot\frac{400}{F} \tag{6f}$$

Thus, the barrier thickness required to reduce the exposure to P is the

TABLE B-2—*Ratio, a, of scattered to incident exposure*[a]

Source	Scattering Angle (from Central Ray)					
	30	45	60	90	120	135
X Rays						
50 kV[b]	0.0005	0.0002	0.00025	0.00035	0.0008	0.0010
70 kV[b]	0.00065	0.00035	0.00035	0.0005	0.0010	0.0013
100 kV[b]	0.0015	0.0012	0.0012	0.0013	0.0020	0.0022
125 kV[b]	0.0018	0.0015	0.0015	0.0015	0.0023	0.0025
150 kV[b]	0.0020	0.0016	0.0016	0.0016	0.0024	0.0026
200 kV[b]	0.0024	0.0020	0.0019	0.0019	0.0027	0.0028
250 kV[b]	0.0025	0.0021	0.0019	0.0019	0.0027	0.0028
300 kV[b]	0.0026	0.0022	0.0020	0.0019	0.0026	0.0028
4 MV[c]	–	0.0027	–	–	–	–
6 MV[d]	0.007	0.0018	0.0011	0.0006	–	0.0004
Gamma Rays						
^{137}Cs[e]	0.0065	0.0050	0.0041	0.0028	–	0.0019
^{60}Co[f]	0.0060	0.0036	0.0023	0.0009	–	0.0006

[a] Scattered radiation measured at one meter from phantom when field area is 400 cm^2 at the phantom surface; incident exposure measured at center of field one meter from the source but without phantom.

[b] From Trout and Kelley (Radiology 104, 161 (1972)). Average scatter for beam centered and beam at edge of typical patient cross-section phantom. Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[c] From Greene and Massey (Brit. J. Radiology 34, 389 (1961)), cylindrical phantom.

[d] From Karzmark and Capone (Brit. J. Radiology 41, 222 (1968)), cylindrical phantom.

[e] Interpolated from Frantz and Wyckoff (Radiology 73, 263 (1959)), these data were obtained from a slab placed obliquely to the central ray. A cylindrical phantom should give smaller values.

[f] From Mooney and Braestrup (AEC Report NYO 2165 (1967)), modified for F = 400 cm.^{2}

one that corresponds to the value of K_{ux} on the pertinent attenuation curve.

Example:

Determine the thickness of scattered radiation protective barrier necessary to protect a controlled area 2.1 meters (7 feet) from the scatterer (patient) using a 250 kV x-ray therapy machine having a weekly workload of 20,000 mA min. The wall in question adjoins an area with an occupancy factor of unity and the treatment distance is 50 cm (0.5 m)

$$\begin{aligned} P &= 0.1\ \text{R} \\ d_{\text{sec}} &= 2.1\ \text{m} \\ d_{\text{sca}} &= 0.5\ \text{m} \\ \text{a} &= 0.0019 \\ W &= 20{,}000\ \text{mA min} \end{aligned}$$

$$T = 1$$
$$F = 400 \text{ cm}^2$$

Substituting in Equation 6f

$$K_{ux} = \frac{(0.1)\ (0.5)^2\ (2.1)\ (400)}{(0.0019)\ (20{,}000)\ (1)\ (400)} = 0.0029$$

The 250 kV curves in Figures 2 and 3 (Appendix D) show that the required barrier thickness for K_{ux} is 3.8 mm of lead or 23.5 cm of concrete.

For installations using x rays of 500 kV or less, the exposure from leakage radiation is of about the same magnitude as that from scattered radiation. However, the leakage radiation is more penetrating than the scattered radiation, so a greater barrier thickness may be required for leakage radiation than for scattered radiation and therefore be the determining factor for the secondary protective barrier.

For x-ray beams of 1 to 3 MV the scattered radiation is less penetrating than is the useful beam. For 90° scattered radiation the value of the ratio of scatter to incident exposure, a, is about 1×10^{-3} and the transmission of the scattered radiation through the barrier is about the same as for a 500 kV *useful* beam. However, because of the much higher output with increasing operating voltage, the value of $\dot{X}_n$ for voltages higher than 500 kV is larger than the value for 500 kV x rays, $(\dot{X}_n)_{0.5}$. Consequently, in order to use Equation 6f for scattered radiation from these higher voltage x-ray beams, the value of $(\dot{X}_n)_{0.5}$, and hence the value of K_{ux} must be normalized by multiplying the right hand side of Equation 6f by the factor appropriate for the higher operating voltage. The factors for 1 MV, 2 MV, and 3 MV are, respectively, 1/20, 1/300, and 1/700.

The barriers required for scattered radiation from *4 to 10 MV x-ray beams* may be calculated using Equation 6e, Table B-2 and the attenuation curves of Figures 9 and 10 (Appendix D). However, the barrier requirements for the leakage radiation (Equation 5d) will generally be greater, and therefore be the determining factor for the secondary protective barriers.

The transmission factor, B_{sg}, needed to calculate the thickness of secondary protective barriers for scattered radiation from ^{137}Cs and ^{60}Co gamma-ray beams is given by

$$B_{sg} = \frac{P}{aWT} \cdot (d_{sec})^2 \cdot (d_{sca})^2 \cdot \frac{400}{F} \qquad (6g)$$

The values for the ratio, a, in this equation can be obtained from

Table B-2. The required concrete or lead thicknesses can then be determined from the attenuation curves shown in Figures 14, 15, 16, 17 (Appendix D).

B.2.3 *Barrier Against Stray Radiation*

If the required barrier thickness for leakage and scattered radiations are found to be approximately the same, one *HVL* should be added to the larger one to obtain the required total secondary barrier thickness. If the two differ by at least one *TVL*, the thicker of the two will be adequate.

Example:

Examples of the computation of leakage and scattered radiation protective barriers were given in B.2.1 and B.2.2 for a 250 kV x-ray therapy machine.

TABLE B-3—*Assumptions used in calculating secondary barrier requirements, Appendix C, Tables 5–24*

Installations	I[a]	a[b]	d_{sca}[c]	F[d]
100kV[e] diagnostic fluoroscopic	5	0.0013	0.45	400
125kV[e] diagnostic fluoroscopic	4	0.0015	0.45	400
150kV[e] diagnostic fluoroscopic	3.3	0.0016	0.45	400
100kV[e] diagnostic radiographic	5	0.0013	0.8	1000[f]
125kV[e] diagnostic radiographic	4	0.0015	0.8	1000[f]
150kV[e] diagnostic radiographic	3.3	0.0016	0.8	1000[f]
50kV[e] x-ray therapy	10	0.00035	0.25	400
100kV[e] x-ray therapy	5	0.0013	0.25	400
150kV[e] x-ray therapy	5	0.0016	0.5	400
200kV[e] x-ray therapy	20	0.0019	0.5	400
250kV[e] x-ray therapy	20	0.0019	0.5	400
300kV[e] x-ray therapy	20	0.0019	0.5	400
1000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	0.001	1	400
2000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	0.001	1	400
3000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	0.001	1	400
4000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	—	—	—
6000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	0.006	1	400
8000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	—	—	—
10000kV[e] x-ray therapy	—[g]	—	—	—
^{137}Cs teletherapy	—[g]	0.0028	0.5	400
^{60}Co teletherapy	—[g]	0.0009	0.5	400

[a] I is the maximum rated continuous tube current in milliamperes at the tube potential listed.

[b] a is the ratio of scattered to incident exposure at 1 meter (see Table B-2).

[c] d_{sca} is the distance in meters from the radiation source to the scatterer.

[d] F is the field area at the scatterer in cm^2.

[e] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[f] Based on 36 × 43 cm (14 × 17 inch) field at 1 meter.

[g] Source housing leakage 0.1 percent of useful beam exposure rate.

For the conditions assumed in those examples, the protective barriers required for leakage and scattered radiations were:

Barrier against leakage radiation: 4.57 mm of lead or 14.6 cm of concrete.

Barrier against scattered radiation: 3.8 mm of lead or 23.5 cm of concrete.

From Table 27 (Appendix C) the *TVL* for 250 kV is 2.9 mm of lead and 9.4 cm of concrete. Since the computed protective barrier requirements for leakage and scattered radiations differ by less than one *TVL*, one *HVL* should be added to the larger. From Table 27 (Appendix C), the *HVL*'s are 0.88 mm of lead and 2.8 cm of concrete resulting in a secondary protective barrier of 5.45 mm of lead or 26.3 cm of concrete. These same values, rounded off as described in Section 2, "Barrier Thickness Requirements", of this report, are given in Table 12 (Appendix C).

B.2.4 *Computation of Secondary Barrier Requirements for Typical Radiation Installations, Tables 5 through 24 (Appendix C)*

The shielding requirements for secondary barriers for typical radiation installations given in Tables 5 through 24 of Appendix C were ıputed using typical assumptions for the factors. The assumptions ed in these computations include those shown in Table B-3.

APPENDIX C

Tables

TABLE 1—*Maximum permissible dose equivalent recommendations* (MPD)[a]
[The indicated values are for the limited scope of this report. See NCRP Report No. 39 [2] for more complete information.]

	Weekly Dose[b]	Maximum Calendar Quarter Dose	Maximum Yearly Dose	Maximum Accumulated Dose[c]
	rem[d]	*rem*[d]	*rem*[d]	*rem*[d]
Controlled Areas				
Whole body, gonads, red bone marrow, lens of eye	0.1	3 –	5	5 (N-18)[e]
Skin of whole body	–	–	15	–
Hands	–	25	75	–
Forearms	–	10	30	–
Non-controlled Areas	0.01	–	0.5	–

[a] Exposure of patients for medical and dental purposes is not included in the maximum permissible dose equivalent.

[b] For design purposes only.

[c] Long-term accumulation of combined retrospective and prospective whole-body dose equivalent.

[d] The numerical value of the dose equivalent in rem may be assumed to be equal to the numerical value of the exposure in roentgens for the purposes of this report.

[e] N = age in years and is greater than 18.

Table 2—*Typical weekly workloads for busy installations*

Diagnostic	Daily Patient Load	Weekly workload (*W*) mA min		
		100 kV[a] or less	125 kV[a]	150 kV[a]
Admission Chest:				
(Miniature, with photo-timing grid)	100	100	–	–
Chest:				
(14 × 17: 3 films per patient, no grid)	60	150	–	–
Cystoscopy	8	600	–	–
Fluoroscopy including spot filming	24	1,500	600	300
Fluoroscopy without spot filming	24	1,000	400	200
Fluoroscopy with image intensification including spot filming	24	750	300	150
General Radiography	24	1,000	400	200
Special Procedures	8	700	280	140
Therapy		**Weekly workload (*W*)**		
Superficial (up to 150 kV[a])	32	3,000 mA min		
Orthovoltage (200-500 kV[a])	32	20,000 mA min		
Megavoltage (0.5 MV–10 MV)	50	100,000 R at a meter[b]		
Cesium				
50 cm *SSD*	16	8,000 R at a meter[b]		
50 cm *SSD*	32	15,000 R at a meter[b]		
60 cm *SSD*	32	24,000 R at a meter[b]		
Cobalt				
70 cm *SSD*	32	30,000 R at a meter[b]		
80 cm *SSD*	32	40,000 R at a meter[b]		
100 cm *SSD*	32	60,000 R at a meter[b]		

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] R per week at a meter = R m^2 per week.

Table 3—*Use factors for primary protective barriers*[a]

[To be used only if specific values for a given installation are not available.]

	Radiographic Installations	Therapy Installations
Floor	1	1
Walls	1/4	1/4
Ceiling	—[b]	—[c]

[a] The use factor for secondary protective barriers is usually 1.

[b] The shielding requirements for the ceiling of a radiographic installation are determined by the secondary barrier requirements rather than by the use factor which is generally extremely low.

[c] The use factor for the ceiling of a therapy installation depends on the type of equipment and techniques used, but usually is not more than 1/4.

TABLE 4—*Occupancy factors for non-occupationally*[a] *exposed persons*[b]

[For use as a guide in planning shielding where other occupancy data are not available.]

Full Occupancy (T = 1)
Work areas such as offices, laboratories, shops, wards, nurses' stations; living quarters; children's play areas; and occupied space in nearby buildings.
Partial Occupancy (T = 1/4)
Corridors, rest rooms, elevators using operators, unattended parking lots.
Occasional Occupancy (T = 1/16)[c]
Waiting rooms, toilets, stairways, unattended elevators, janitors' closets, outside areas used only for pedestrians or vehicular traffic.

[a] The occupancy factor of occupationally exposed persons, in general, may be assumed to be one (see text, Section 2, for discussion).

[b] It is advantageous in shielding design to take into account that the occupancy factor in areas adjacent to the radiation room usually is zero for any space more than 2.1 m (7 feet) above the floor as the height of most individuals is less. It is possible, therefore, to reduce the thickness of the wall shielding above this height provided the radiation source is below 2.1 m (7 feet). In determining the shielding requirements for wall areas above 2.1 m (7 feet), consideration must be given to the protection of any persons occupying the floor above the areas adjacent to the radiation room. The wall areas over 2.1 m (7 feet) from the floor of the radiation room must also have sufficient shielding to adequately reduce the scattering from the ceiling of adjacent rooms toward occupants.

[c] It should be noted that the use of an occupancy factor of 1/16 may result in full-time exposures in non-controlled areas greater than 2 mR in any one hour or 100 mR in any seven consecutive days.

TABLE 5—*Minimum shielding requirements for radiographic installations*

WUT[a] in mA min			Distance in meters from source to occupied area										
100 kV[b]	125 kV[b]	150 kV[b]											
1,000	400	200	1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
500	200	100		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
250	100	50			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
125	50	25				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
62.5	25	12.5					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
Type of Area	Material		Primary protective barrier thickness[e]										
Controlled	Lead, mm[c]		1.95	1.65	1.4	1.15	0.9	0.65	0.45	0.3	0.2	0.1	0.1
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[c]		2.9	2.6	2.3	2.05	1.75	1.5	1.2	0.95	0.75	0.55	0.35
Controlled	Concrete, cm[d]		18	15.5	13.5	11.5	9.5	7	5.5	4	2.5	1.5	0.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[d]		25	23	20.5	18.5	16.5	14	12	10	8		
			Secondary protective barrier thickness[e]										
Controlled	Lead, mm[c]		0.55	0.45	0.35	0.3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[c]		1.3	1.05	0.75	0.55	0.45	0.35	0.3	0.05	0	0	0
Controlled	Concrete, cm[d]		5	3.5	2.5	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[d]		11.5	9.5	7.5	5.5	4	3	2	0.5	0	0	0

---

[a] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[b] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[c] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[d] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[e] Barrier thickness based on 150 kV.

TABLE 6—*Shielding requirements for radiographic film*

[Indicated thickness required to reduce radiation to 0.2 mR for a weekly workload of 1000 mA min at 100 kV, 400 mA min at 125 kV, or 200 mA min at 150 kV.[a]]

Storage Period	Barrier Type	Distance from Source to Stored Film							
		2.1 m (7 feet)		3.0 m (10 feet)		4.2 m (14 feet)		6.1 m (20 feet)	
		Lead	Concrete[b]	Lead	Concrete[b]	Lead	Concrete[b]	Lead	Concrete[b]
		mm[c]	cm	mm[c]	cm	mm[c]	cm	mm[c]	cm
1 day	Primary with use factor, U, of $^1/_{16}$	2.3	19.5	2.1	18	1.8	15.5	1.5	13.5
1 week		3.0	24	2.7	22	2.4	20.5	2.2	18.5
1 month		3.7	29	3.4	27	3.1	24	2.8	23
1 day	Secondary with use factor, U, of 1	1.7	15	1.5	13	1.2	11	1.0	9
1 week		2.4	19.5	2.1	17.5	1.8	16	1.5	13.5
1 month		3.0	24	2.8	22	2.5	20	2.2	18.5

Note: In the absence of specific information as to the length of film storage period to be expected, it is suggested that the shielding value for the 1 month's storage period be used.

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[c] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

TABLE 7—*Minimum shielding requirements for fluoroscopic installations*

WT[a] in mA min			Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
100 kV[b]	125 kV[b]	150 kV[b]												
2,000	800	400	1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
1,000	400	200		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
500	200	100			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
250	100	50				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
125	50	25					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
62.5	25	12.5						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
Type of Area	Material		Secondary protective barrier thickness											
Controlled	Lead, mm[c]		0.75	0.6	0.45	0.35	0.3	0.05	0	0	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[c]		1.6	1.3	1.05	0.75	0.6	0.45	0.4	0.35	0.05	0	0	0
Controlled	Concrete, cm[d]		7.5	5.5	4	3	2.5	0.5	0	0	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[d]		14	12	10	8	6	4.5	3.5	2.5	0.5	0	0	0

[a] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, T—occupancy factor.

[b] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[c] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or surface density.

[d] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 8—*Minimum shielding requirements for 50 kV*[a] *therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
4,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
2,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
1,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
500					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
250						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
125							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
62.5								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
31.3									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	0.4	0.35	0.3	0.25	0.2	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.1	0.05	0.05	0.05
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	0.55	0.5	0.45	0.4	0.35	0.3	0.3	0.25	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.1
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	4	3.5	3	2.5	2	2	1.5	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	5.5	5	4.5	4	3.5	3	2.5	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	0.3	0.25	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.05	0.05	0.05	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	0.4	0.35	0.3	0.25	0.25	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.1	0.05	0.05	0.05
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	3.5	3.5	3	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U— use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 9—*Minimum shielding requirements for 100 kV[a] therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
4,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12					
2,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12				
1,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12			
500					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12		
250						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12	
125							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4	12
62.5								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0	8.4
31.3									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.0
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	2.4	2.15	1.85	1.6	1.35	1.1	0.85	0.65	0.45	0.3	0.2	0.1
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	3.35	3.05	2.75	2.5	2.2	1.95	1.7	1.4	1.2	0.95	0.7	0.5
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	18	16	14.5	13	11.5	10	8.5	7	5.5	4	2.5	1.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	24	22	20.5	18.5	17	15	13.5	12	10.5	9	7.5	6
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	1.9	1.6	1.3	1.05	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.25	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	2.45	2.2	1.95	1.65	1.4	1.1	1.1	0.85	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.3
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	11.5	10	8	6.5	5	3	2	2	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	17	15	13.5	12	10.5	8.5	7	5.5	3.5	2	2	2

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 10—*Minimum shielding requirements for 150 kV*[a] *therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
4,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
2,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
1,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
500					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.2	8.4	12.2		
250						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
125							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
62.5								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
31.3									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	3.15	2.85	2.55	2.3	2.0	1.7	1.45	1.2	0.95	0.7	0.5	0.35
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	4.2	3.85	3.55	3.25	2.95	2.65	2.4	2.1	1.8	1.55	1.3	1.0
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	27	25	22.5	20.5	18.5	16	14	11.5	9.5	7.5	5.5	4
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	35	32.5	30	27.5	25.5	23.5	21	19	17	14.5	12.5	10.5
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	2.05	1.75	1.45	1.15	0.85	0.55	0.35	0.3	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	3.05	2.75	2.45	2.15	1.85	1.55	1.25	0.95	0.65	0.35	0.3	0
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	15	13	11	8.5	6.5	4	2.5	2	0	0	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	22.5	20.5	18.5	16	13.5	11.5	9.5	7	5	2.5	2	0

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] W—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 11—*Minimum shielding requirements for 200 kV*[a] *therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
40,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
20,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
10,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
5,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
2,500						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
1,250							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
625								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	6.6	6.1	5.5	5.0	4.5	4.0	3.6	3.1	2.7	2.3	1.9	1.6
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	8.4	7.6	7.2	6.8	6.2	5.8	5.2	4.7	4.2	3.7	3.2	2.8
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	43.5	40.5	37.5	35	32.5	29.5	27	24.5	21.5	19.5	17	14.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	52	50	46.5	44	41.5	39	36	33.5	30.5	28	25.5	23
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	4.25	3.7	3.2	2.7	2.15	1.7	1.4	1.15	0.9	0.75	0.6	0.05
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	6.0	5.45	4.95	4.4	3.9	3.4	2.85	2.35	1.8	1.5	1.25	1.0
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	27	24.5	22	19.5	17	14	11.5	9.5	7	5	3.5	0.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	35.5	33	30.5	28	25.5	23	20	17.5	15	12.5	10	8

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 12—*Minimum shielding requirements for 250 kV*[a] *therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
40,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
20,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
10,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
5,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
2,500						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
1,250							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
625								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	11.45	10.6	9.65	8.8	7.9	7.05	6.2	5.4	4.6	3.9	3.2	2.5
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	14.55	13.2	12.15	11.8	10.85	9.95	9.05	8.2	7.35	6.5	5.65	4.9
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	49	45.5	42.5	40	37	34.5	31.5	29	26	23.5	20.5	18
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	58	55.5	52.5	49.5	46.5	43.5	41	38	35	32.5	29.5	27
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	7.2	6.3	5.4	4.5	3.65	2.8	2.3	1.9	1.55	1.25	1.1	0.05
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	10.1	9.25	8.35	7.5	6.6	5.7	4.85	3.95	3.1	2.5	2.05	1.65
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	31.5	28.5	26.5	23.5	20.5	18	15	12.5	9.5	7.5	4.5	0.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	41	38	36	33	30	27	24	22	19	16	12.5	10

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those are given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 13—*Minimum shielding requirements for 300 kV*[a] *therapy installations*

WUT[b] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
40,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
20,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
10,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
5,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
2,500						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
1,250							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
625								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	17.65	16.25	14.85	13.45	12.05	10.75	9.4	8.2	6.9	5.8	4.7	3.75
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	22.5	21.1	19.6	18.15	16.7	15.3	13.85	12.55	11.2	9.85	8.55	7.35
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	55	51.5	48.5	45	42	39	36	33.5	30	27	24	21
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	64.5	62	59	56	53	49.5	46.5	43.5	40	37	34	31
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[c]											
Controlled	Lead, mm[d]	12.0	10.55	9.05	7.6	6.1	4.65	3.55	2.95	2.5	2.1	1.8	1.6
Noncontrolled	Lead, mm[d]	16.9	15.45	13.95	12.5	11.05	9.55	8.1	6.6	5.15	3.75	3.1	2.65
Controlled	Concrete, cm[e]	33	30	27	24	21	18	14.5	11.5	9	6	3.5	1.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[e]	43	40	37	34	31	28	25	22.5	19	15.5	12.5	10

[a] Peak pulsating x-ray tube potential.

[b] W—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Constant potential requires about 20 percent larger thicknesses of lead and about 10 percent larger thicknesses of concrete than those given here for pulsating potential.

[d] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[e] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 14—*Minimum shielding requirements for 1 MV therapy installations*

WUT[a] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
5,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
2,500			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
1,250				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
625					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
313						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
156							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
78								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	11	10.5	10	9	9	7	6.5	6	5	4	3.5	3
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	14	13	12.5	11.5	11	10	9	8.5	7.5	7	6	5
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	70	66	62	57	53	48	43	39	35	30	26	21
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	85	81	77	72	68	63	59	54	50	45	40	36
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[d]											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	6	5.5	5.5	4.5	4	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	9	8	7	6.5	5.5	5	4.5	4	3.5	2.5	2	1.5
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	46	42	37	33	28.5	24	19	15	10.5	6	1.5	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	61	57	52	48	43	39	35	30	25	20.5	16.5	12

[a] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[b] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for tube housing leakage based on a weekly workload (WUT) of 5,000 mA min corresponding to a weekly workload (WUT) of 100,000 R at 1 meter ($\dot{X}_n$ = 20 R per mA min at 1 meter).

TABLE 15—*Minimum shielding requirements for 2 MV therapy installations*

WUT[a] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
350		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
175			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
87.5				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
44					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
22						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
11							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
5.5								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	22	21	19.5	18.5	17	16	15	13.5	12.5	11	10	9
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	26	25	24	22.5	21.5	30	19	18	16.5	15.5	14	13
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	118	111	105	98	92	86	80	74	67.5	61	57	49.5
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	138	132	126	119	113	107	101	95	89	82.5	78	70.5
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[d]											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	11	10	8.5	7.5	6	6	4.5	3.5	2	1	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	15.5	14	12.5	11.5	10	10	9	7.5	6.5	5	4	2.5
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	63	55.5	49.5	44	37	31	24.5	18.5	12.5	6	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	84.5	76.5	70.5	65.5	58	52	46	39.5	33.5	27	20.5	14.5

[a] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[b] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for tube housing leakage based on a weekly workload (*WUT*) of 350 mA min corresponding to a weekly workload (*WUT*) of 100,000 R at 1 meter ($\dot{X}_n$ = 300 R per mA min at 1 meter).

TABLE 16—*Minimum shielding requirements for 3 MV therapy installations*

WUT[a] in mA min		Distance in meters from source to occupied area											
150		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2					
75			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
37.5				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
18.75					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
9.5						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
4.75							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
2.35								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
Type of Area	Material	Primary protective barrier thickness											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	30	28	26.5	25	23.5	22	20.5	19	17.5	16	14.5	13
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	35	33	31.5	30	28.5	27	25	24	22.5	21	19.5	18
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	150	146	138	131	124	116	109	101	94	86	79	71
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	180	171	169	156	150	141	134	126	118	111	103	96
		Secondary protective barrier thickness[d]											
Controlled	Lead, cm[b]	13	11.5	10	8.5	7	7	5.5	4	2.5	1	0	0
Noncontrolled	Lead, cm[b]	17.5	16.5	15	13.5	12	12	10.5	9	7.5	6	4.5	3
Controlled	Concrete, cm[c]	69	62	54	54	46	38.5	31.5	23.5	15	8	0	0
Noncontrolled	Concrete, cm[c]	93	86	78	78	70	62.5	55.5	48	39.5	32	24.5	17

[a] *W*—weekly workload in mA min, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[b] See Table 26 for conversion of thickness in millimeters to inches or to surface density.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for tube housing leakage based on a weekly workload (*W*UT) of 150 mA min corresponding to a weekly workload (*W*UT) of 100,000 R at 1 meter ($\dot{X}_n$ = 700 R per mA min at 1 meter).

TABLE 17—*Minimum shielding requirements for 4 MV therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area									
160,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17		
80,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17	
40,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17
20,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
10,000							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
5,000								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
2,500									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
Type of Protective Barrier	Material	*TVL* cm	Thickness of barrier in cm									
Primary	Concrete[c]	29.2	171	162	153	144	136	127	118	109	101	92
Primary	Lead	5.3	31	29.5	28	26.5	24.5	23	21.5	19.5	18	16.5
Primary	Iron[e]	9.1	53.5	50.5	48	45	42.5	39.5	37	34	31.5	28.5
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Concrete[c]	29.2	83	75	66	57	48	39	31	22	13	4
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Lead	5.3	15	13.5	12	11.5	10	8.5	7	5.5	4	2.5

---

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for leakage radiation from tube housing.

[e] Thickness based on iron density of 7.8 g cm^{-3} (488 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 18—*Minimum shielding requirements for 6 MV therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area									
160,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17		
80,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17	
40,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17
20,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
10,000							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
5,000								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
2,500									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
Type of Protective Barrier	Material	*TVL* cm	Thickness of barrier in cm									
Primary	Concrete[c]	34.5	202	192	182	172	161	151	141	131	119	109
Primary	Lead	5.6	33	31	29.5	27.5	26	24.5	22.5	21	19	17.5
Primary	Iron[e]	9.9	58	55	52	49	46	43	40	37	34	31
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Concrete[c]	34.5	98.5	88	77.5	67.5	57	46.5	36	25.5	15.5	5
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Lead	5.6	16	14.5	12.5	11	9	7.5	6	4	2.5	1
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Iron[e]	9.9	28.5	25.5	22.5	19.5	16.5	13.5	10.5	7.5	4.5	1.5
Scatter[f]	Concrete[c]											
30°		26.7	98	89.5	82	74	66	58	50	42	34	26
45°		23.4	72	65	58	51	44	37	30	23	16	8.5
60°		20.3	58	52	46	40	34	28	21.5	15	9	3
90°		17.8	46.5	41	36	30.5	25	20	14.5	9	4	0
135°		14.5	36	31.5	27	22.5	18.5	13.5	9	5	0	0

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas, to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness for primary and leakage protective barriers based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for leakage radiation from tube housing.

[e] Thickness based on iron density of 7.8 g cm^{-3} (488 lb ft^{-3}).

[f] Scatter protective barrier thickness based on Karzmark and Capone [23].

TABLE 19—*Minimum shielding requirements for 8 MV therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter		Distance in meters from source to occupied area									
160,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17		
80,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17	
40,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17
20,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
10,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
5,000							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
2,500								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
Type of Protective Barrier	Material	Thickness of barrier in cm									
Primary	Concrete[c]	223	212	200	189	177	166	154	143	131	120
Primary	Lead	33	31.5	29.5	28	26	24.5	23	21	19.5	17.5
Primary	Iron[e]	60.5	57.5	54	51	48	45	41.5	38.5	35.5	32.5
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Concrete[c]	108	96.5	85.5	74	62.5	51.5	39.5	28.5	16.5	5.5
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Lead	16	14.5	12.5	11	9.5	7.5	6	4	2.5	1
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Iron[e]	29.5	26.5	23	20	17	14	11	7.5	4.5	1.5

---

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas to reduce to 10 mR (see Table 27).

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for leakage radiation from tube housing.

[e] Thickness based on iron density of 7.8 g cm^{-3} (488 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 20—*Minimum shielding requirements for 10 MV therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter		Distance in meters from source to occupied area									
160,000		1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17		
80,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17	
40,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	17
20,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
10,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
5,000							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
2,500								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
Type of Protective Barrier	Material	Thickness of barrier in cm									
Primary	Concrete[c]	234	222	210	198	186	174	162	150	138	126
Primary	Lead	32.5	30.5	29	27.5	25.5	24	22.5	20.5	19	17.5
Primary	Iron[e]	61.5	58.5	55.5	52	49	46	42.5	39.5	36	33
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Concrete[c]	114	102	90	77.5	66	53.5	42	29.5	17.5	6
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Lead	15.5	14	12.5	11	9.5	7.5	6	4	2.5	1
Leakage[d] 0.1 percent	Iron[e]	30	26.5	23.5	20.5	17.5	14	11	7.5	4.5	1.5

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas to reduce to 10 mR (see Table 27).

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Shielding for leakage radiation from tube housing.

[e] Thickness based on iron density of 7.8 g cm^{-3} (488 lb ft^{-3}).

TABLE 21* —*Minimum lead shielding requirements for cobalt-60 therapy installations for controlled areas*[a] *(revised as of February 1, 1977)*

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area										
120,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
60,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
30,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
15,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
7,500							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
3,750								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
1,875									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
950										1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
475											1.5	2.1	3.0
240												1.5	2.1
120													1.5
	Approx.												
Type of Protective Barrier	*HVL* cm of lead	*TVL* cm of lead	Thickness of lead in centimeters										
Primary	1.2	4.0	23.5	22	21	20	18.5	17.5	16	15	14	12.5	11.5
Secondary Leakage[c]													
0.1 percent	1.2	4.0	11.5	10	9	8	6.5	5.5	4	3	1.5	0.5	0
0.05 percent	1.2	4.0	10	9	8	6.5	5.5	4	3	1.5	0.5	0	0
Scatter[d]													
30°	1.0	3.35	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	4.5	3.5
45°	0.87	2.9	10.5	9.5	9	8	7.5	6.5	5.5	5	4	3.5	2.5
60°	0.74	2.45	8.5	8	7	6.5	5.5	5	4.5	3.5	3	2.5	1.5
90°	0.44	1.45	5	4.5	4	3.5	3	2.5	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5
120°	0.20	0.65	2	2	1.5	1.5	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas, to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Refers to leakage radiation from source housing when source in "ON" condition; may be ignored if less than 2.5 mR per h at 1 m.

[d] For large field (20 cm diameter) and a source to skin distance of 40 to 60 cm. This includes scattering from the collimator and from the phantom.

TABLE 22—*Minimum concrete shielding requirements for cobalt-60 therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area										
120,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
60,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
30,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
15,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
7,500							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
3,750								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
1,875									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
950										1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2
475											1.5	2.1	3.0
240												1.5	2.1
120													1.5
Type of Protective Barrier	Approx. *HVL* cm of Concrete	Approx. *TVL* cm of Concrete	Thickness of concrete in centimeters[c]										
Primary	6.2	20.6	125	119	112	106	99.5	93.5	87	80.5	74	67.5	61
Secondary Leakage[d]													
0.1 percent	6.2	20.6	62	55	48	42.5	36	29.5	23	17	10	1	0
0.05 percent	6.2	20.6	55	48	42.5	36	29.5	23	17	10	1	0	0
Scatter[e]													
30°	6.1	20.3	87	81	74.5	68.5	62	57	49	42.5	36.5	29.5	23.5
45°	6.0	19.8	76.5	70.5	64.5	59	53	47	41	35	29	23.5	17.5
60°	5.8	19.2	70	64.5	58.5	52.5	47	41.5	36.5	31	24.5	18	13
90°	4.6	15.4	49.5	45	40.5	36	31.5	27	22	18	13	8.5	4
120°	4.4	14.5	42.5	38.5	34.5	30.5	26	22	18	13.5	9.5	5.5	2

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas, to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Refers to leakage radiation from source housing when source in "ON" condition; may be ignored if less than 2.5 mR per h at 1 m.

[e] For large field (20 cm diameter) and a source to skin distance of 40 to 60 cm. This includes scattering from the collimator and from the phantom.

TABLE 23—*Minimum lead shielding requirements for cesium-137 therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area										
24,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
12,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
6,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
3,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
1,500							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
750								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
375									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
Type of Protective Barrier	Approx *HVL* cm of Lead	Approx *TVL* cm of Lead	Thickness of lead in centimeters										
Primary	0.65	2.16	11	10	9.5	9	8.5	7.5	7	6	5.5	5	4.5
Secondary Leakage[c]													
0.1 percent	0.65	2.16	4.5	4	3	2.5	2	1	0.5	0	0	0	0
0.05 percent	0.65	2.16	4	3	2.5	2	1	0.5	0	0	0	0	0
Scatter[d]													
30°	0.55	1.8	6	5.5	5	4.5	3.5	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5
45°	0.45	1.5	4.5	4	3.5	3	3	2.5	2	1.5	1	0.5	0.5
60°	0.38	1.3	3.5	3	3	2.5	2	1.5	1.5	1	0.5	0.5	0.5
90°	0.22	0.7	2	1.5	1.5	1	1	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5
135°	0.13	0.4	1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer *(TVL)* for noncontrolled areas, to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Refers to leakage radiation of source housing when source in "ON" condition; may be ignored if less than 2.5 mR per h at 1 m.

[d] For large field (20 cm diam) and a source-scatterer distance of 50 cm. This includes only scattering from an obliquely positioned flat scatterer.

TABLE 24—*Minimum concrete shielding requirements for cesium-137 therapy installations for controlled areas*[a]

WUT[b] in R at 1 meter			Distance in meters from source to occupied area										
24,000			1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2				
12,000				1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2			
6,000					1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2		
3,000						1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2	
1,500							1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4	12.2
750								1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1	8.4
375									1.5	2.1	3.0	4.2	6.1
Type of Protective Barrier	Approx. *HVL* cm of Concrete	Approx. *TVL* cm of Concrete	Thickness of concrete in centimeters[c]										
Primary	4.8	15.7	88	83	77.5	72.5	67	62	56.5	51.5	46.5	41.5	36.5
Secondary Leakage[d]													
0.1 percent	4.8	15.7	36.5	31	26	21	15.5	10.5	5	0	0	0	0
0.05 percent	4.8	15.7	31	26	21	15.5	10.5	5	0	0	0	0	0
Scatter[e]													
30°	4.8	15.7	62	56.5	51	45.5	40.5	35	29.5	24	19	13.5	8.5
45°	4.4	14.6	49	44.5	40.5	36	31.5	27	23	18.5	14	9.5	5.5
60°	4.0	13.3	44	40	36	32	27.5	23.5	19.5	15.5	11	7	3
90°	3.7	12.3	38.5	34.5	30.5	27	23	19.5	16	12	8	4.5	0.5
135°	3.4	11.3	33.5	30	26.5	23	19.5	16	12.5	9	5.5	2.5	0

---

[a] For a weekly design level of 100 mR; add one tenth-value layer (*TVL*) for noncontrolled areas, to reduce to 10 mR.

[b] *W*—weekly workload in R at 1 m, U—use factor, T—occupancy factor.

[c] Thickness based on concrete density of 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}).

[d] Refers to leakage radiation from source housing when source in "ON" condition; may be ignored if less than 2.5 mR per h at 1 m.

[e] For large field (20 cm diam) and a source-scatterer distance of 50 cm. This includes only scattering from an obliquely positioned flat scatterer.

TABLE 25—*Densities of commercial building materials*

Material	Range of Density[a]	Average Density[b]	
		g cm^{-3}	lb ft^{-3}
Barium sulfate (natural barite)	–	4.5	280
Barytes concrete	3.6 to 4.1	3.6	210
Brick, soft	1.4 to 1.9	1.65	103
hard	1.8 to 2.3	2.05	128
Earth, dry, packed	–	1.5	95
Ferrophosphorus aggregate concrete	6.0	4.8	300
Granite	2.6 to 2.7	2.65	165
Ilmenite aggregate concrete	4.4 to 4.7	3.85	240
Lead	–	11.36	709
Lead glass	–	3.27	205
Lead glass, high density	–	6.22	387
Limestone	2.1 to 2.8	2.46	153
Marble	2.6 to 2.86	2.7	170
Sand, dry, packed	1.6 to 1.9	–	100–120
Sand plaster	–	1.54	96
Concrete	2.25 to 2.4	2.35	147
Steel	–	7.8	489
Tile	1.6 to 2.5	1.9	118

[a] Density values for the concrete aggregates are given for the aggregate only.

[b] Density values are given for the concrete made from the specified aggregate.

Note: Concrete blocks and cinder blocks vary too much to be listed.

Reference: Mark's Mechanical Engineering Handbook, 5th ed. (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1941); excerpts from a table (pp. 522–523), Approximate Specific Gravity and Density.

Table 26—*Commercial lead sheets*

Thickness		Weight in Pounds for a 1 Square Foot Section	
Inches	Millimeter equivalent	Nominal weight	Actual weight
$^{1}/_{64}$	0.40	1	0.92
$^{3}/_{128}$	0.60	$1^{1}/_{2}$	1.38
$^{1}/_{32}$	0.79	2	1.85
$^{5}/_{128}$	1.00	$2^{1}/_{2}$	2.31
$^{3}/_{64}$	1.19	3	2.76
$^{7}/_{128}$	1.39	$3^{1}/_{2}$	3.22
—	1.50	—	3.48
$^{1}/_{16}$	1.58	4	3.69
$^{5}/_{64}$	1.98	5	4.60
$^{3}/_{32}$	2.38	6	5.53
—	2.5	—	5.80
—	3.0	—	6.98
$^{1}/_{8}$	3.17	8	7.38
$^{5}/_{32}$	3.97	10	9.22
$^{3}/_{16}$	4.76	12	11.06
$^{7}/_{32}$	5.55	14	12.9
$^{1}/_{4}$	6.35	16	14.75
$^{1}/_{3}$	8.47	20	19.66
$^{2}/_{5}$	10.76	24	23.60
$^{1}/_{2}$	12.70	30	29.50
$^{2}/_{3}$	16.93	40	39.33
1	25.40	60	59.00

Notes:

1. The density of commercially rolled lead is 11.36 g cm^{-3}.*
2. The commercial tolerances are ±0.005 inches for lead up to $^{7}/_{128}$ and ± $^{1}/_{32}$ heavier sheets.*
3. It should be noted that lead sheet less than $^{1}/_{32}$ inch thick is frequently more expensive than heavier sheet in cost of material and cost of installation.

* Lead Industries Association, Inc., 292 Madison Avenue, New York.

Table 27—*Half-value and tenth-value layers*

Approximate values obtained at high attenuation for the indicated peak voltage values under broad-beam conditions; with low attenuation these values will be significantly less.

Peak Voltage (kV)	Attenuation Material					
	Lead (mm)		Concrete (cm)		Iron (cm)	
	HVL	*TVL*	*HVL*	*TVL*	*HVL*	*TVL*
50	0.06	0.17	0.43	1.5		
70	0.17	0.52	0.84	2.8		
100	0.27	0.88	1.6	5.3		
125	0.28	0.93	2.0	6.6		
150	0.30	0.99	2.24	7.4		
200	0.52	1.7	2.5	8.4		
250	0.88	2.9	2.8	9.4		
300	1.47	4.8	3.1	10.4		
400	2.5	8.3	3.3	10.9		
500	3.6	11.9	3.6	11.7		
1,000	7.9	26	4.4	14.7		
2,000	12.5	42	6.4	21		
3,000	14.5	48.5	7.4	24.5		
4,000	16	53	8.8	29.2	2.7	9.1
6,000	16.9	56	10.4	34.5	3.0	9.9
8,000	16.9	56	11.4	37.8	3.1	10.3
10,000	16.6	55	11.9	39.6	3.2	10.5
Cesium-137	6.5	21.6	4.8	15.7	1.6	5.3
Cobalt-60	12	40	6.2	20.6	2.1	6.9
Radium	16.6	55	6.9	23.4	2.2	7.4

TABLE 28—*Selected gamma-ray sources*

Radionuclide	Atomic Number	Half Life	Gamma Energy MeV	Half-Value Layer[a]			Tenth-Value Layer[a]			Specific Gamma-Ray Constant[b] R cm^2 per mCi h
				Concrete	Steel	Lead	Concrete	Steel	Lead	
				cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	
Cesium-137	55	27 y	0.66	4.8	1.6	0.65	15.7	5.3	2.1	3.2
Cobalt-60	27	5.24y	1.17, 1.33	6.2	2.1	1.20	20.6	6.9	4.0	13
Gold-198	79	2.7 d	0.41	4.1	—	0.33	13.5	—	1.1	2.32
Iridium-192	77	74 d	0.13 to 1.06	4.3	1.3	0.60	14.7	4.3	2.0	5.0
Radium-226	88	1622 y	0.047 to 2.4	6.9	2.2	1.66	23.4	7.4	5.5	8.25[c]

[a] Approximate values obtained with large attenuation.

[b] These values assume that gamma absorption in the source is negligible. Value in R per millicurie-hour at 1 cm can be converted to R per Ci-h at 1 meter by multiplying the number in this column by 0.10.

[c] This value assumes that the source is sealed within a platinum capsule (0.5 mm wall thickness), with units of R per mg h at 1 cm.

TABLE 29—*Relation between distance and millicurie-hours for an exposure of 0.1 R from an unshielded source*

Millicurie-Hours	Gamma-Ray Source				
	Radium	Cobalt-60	Cesium-137	Iridium-192	Gold-198
	Distance to Source in Meters				
10	0.28	0.37	0.18	0.22	0.15
30	0.49	0.64	0.31	0.39	0.27
100	0.91	1.16	0.57	0.70	0.48
300	1.55	1.98	0.98	1.22	0.83
1,000	2.87	3.65	1.77	2.26	1.52
3,000	4.9	6.35	3.08	3.87	2.70
10,000	9.1	11.6	5.7	7.07	4.82

APPENDIX D

Figures[28]

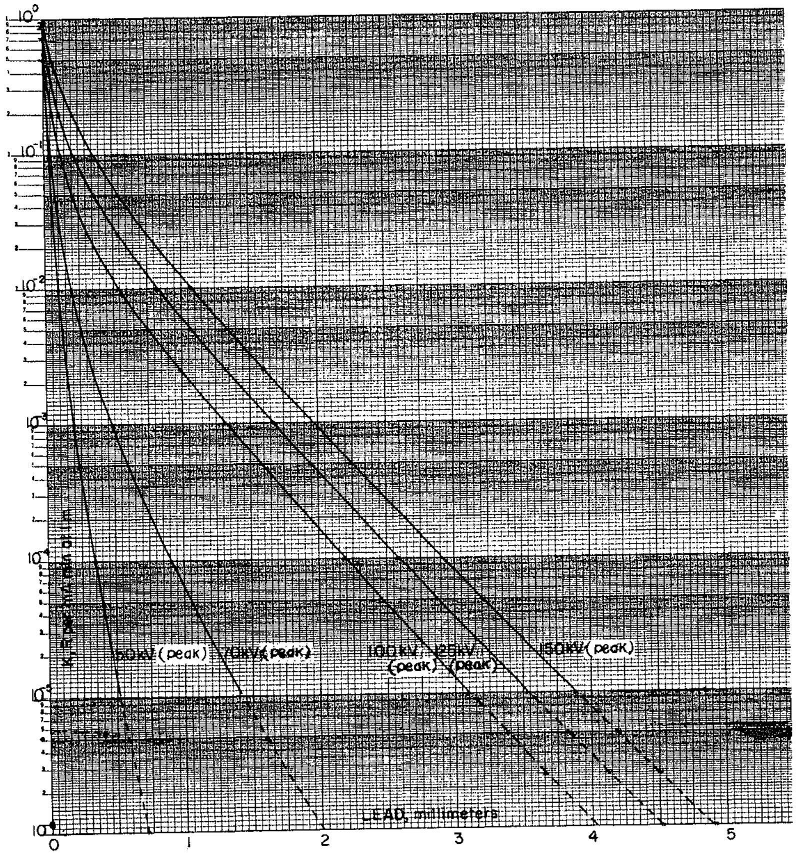


Fig. 1 Attenuation in lead of x rays produced at potentials of 50 to 150 kV peak. The measurements were made with a 90° angle between the electron beam and the axis of the x-ray beam and with pulsed waveform. The filtrations were 0.5 mm of aluminum for 50 kV, 1.5 mm of aluminum for 70 kV, and 2.5 mm of aluminum for 100, 125 and 150 kV (Kelley and Trout [15]).

[Data courtesy of the authors and Radiology.]

---

[28] Full sized reproductions of the figures are available as an adjunct to this report.

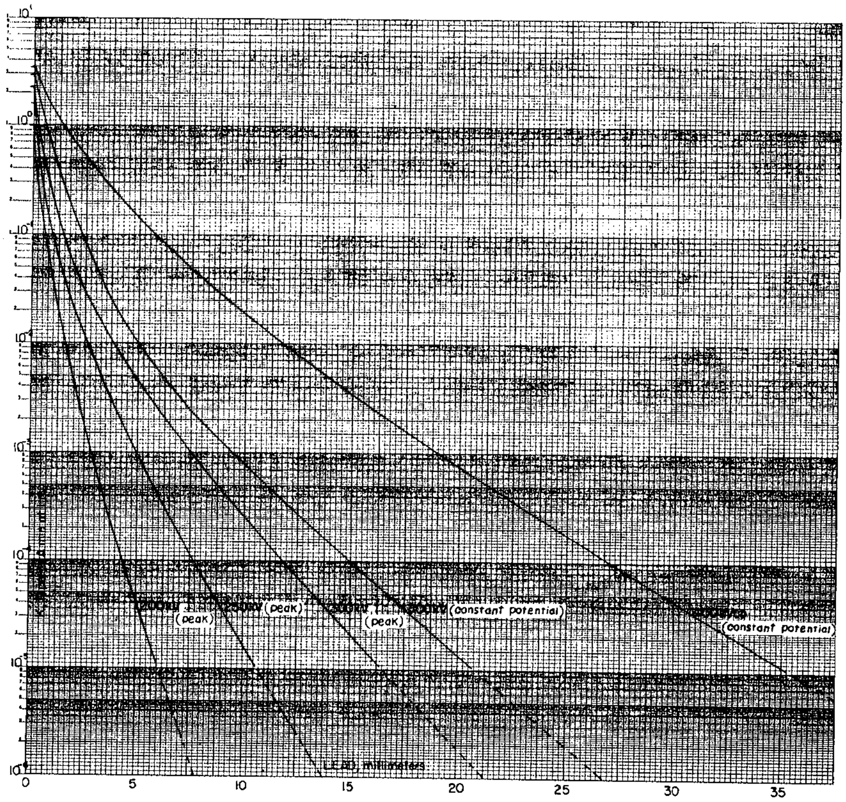


Fig. 2 Attenuation in lead of x rays produced by potentials of 200, 250 and 300 kV peak; 300 and 400 kV constant potential.

The measurements were made with a 90° angle between the electron beam and the axis of the x-ray beam. The 200, 250, and 300 kV curves are for a pulsed waveform and filtration of 3 mm of aluminum (Kelley and Trout [15]). The 300 kV and 400 kV curves were obtained with a constant potential generator and inherent filtration of approximately 3 mm of copper (Miller and Kennedy [16]).

[Data courtesy of the authors and Radiology.]

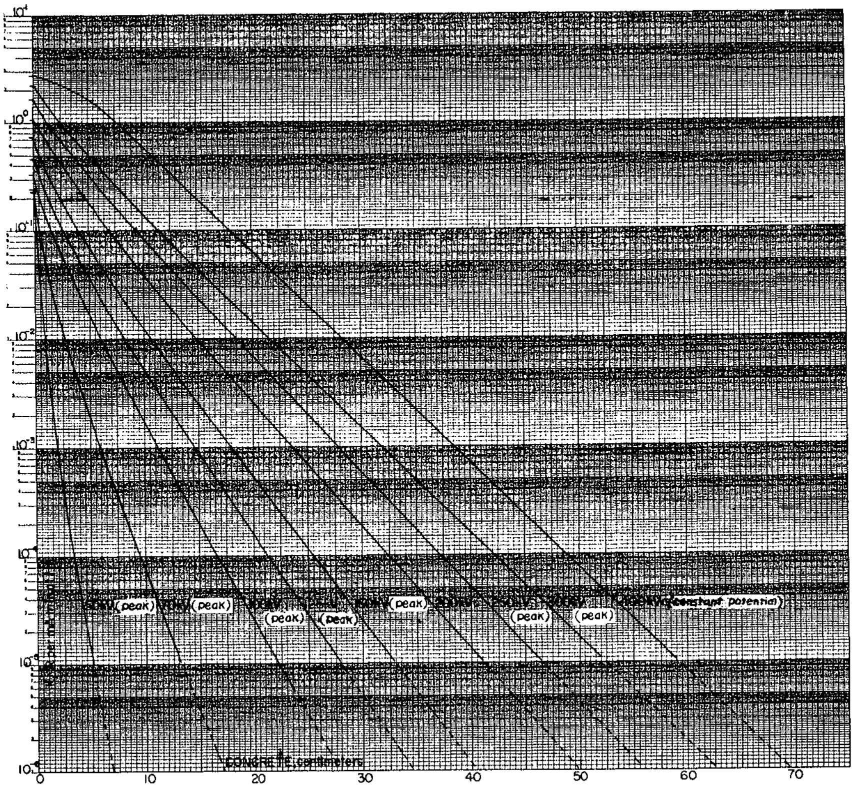


Fig. 3 Attenuation in concrete of x rays produced by potentials of 50 to 300 kV peak; 400 kV constant potential.

The measurements were made with a 90° angle between the electron beam and the axis of the x-ray beam. The curves for 50 to 300 kV are for a pulsed waveform. The filtrations were 1 mm of aluminum for 50 kV, 1.5 mm of aluminum for 70 kV, 2 mm of aluminum for 100 kV, and 3 mm of aluminum for 125, 150, 200, 250, and 300 kV (Trout *et al.* [17]). The 400 kV curve was interpolated from data obtained with a constant potential generator and inherent filtration of approximately 3 mm of copper (Miller and Kennedy [16]).

[Data courtesy of the authors and Radiology.]

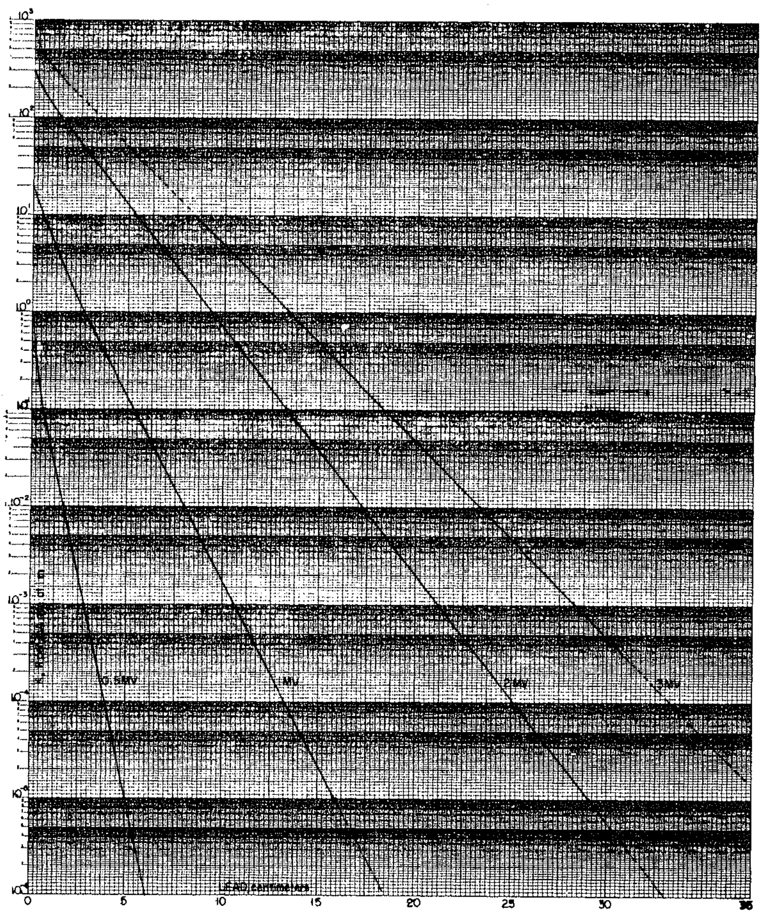


Fig. 4 Attenuation in lead of x rays produced by potentials of 0.5 to 3 MV constant potential.

The measurements were made with 0° angle between the electron beam and the axis of the x-ray beam and with a constant potential generator. The 0.5 and 1 MV curves were obtained with filtration of 2.88 mm of tungsten, 2.8 mm of copper, 2.1 mm of brass, and 18.7 mm of water (Wyckoff *et al.* [18]). The 2 MV curve was obtained by extrapolating to broad-beam conditions (E. E. Smith) from the data of Evans *et al.* [19]. The inherent filtration was equivalent to 6.8 mm of lead. The 3 MV curve has been obtained by interpolation of the 2 MV curve given herein, and the data of Miller and Kennedy [20].

[Data courtesy of the authors, Radiation Research, Radiology and Academic Press.]

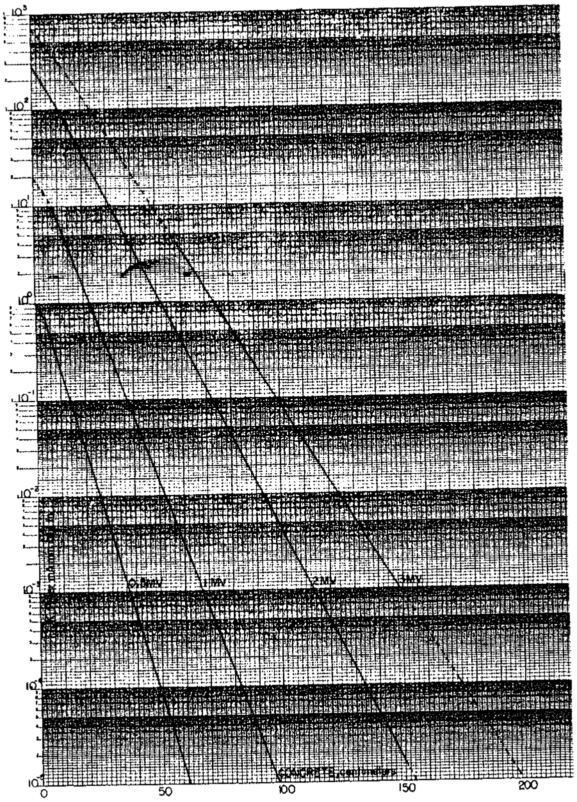


Fig. 5 Attenuation in concrete of x rays produced by potentials of 0.5 to 3 MV constant potential.

The measurements were made with a 0° angle between the electron beam and the axis of the x-ray beam and with a constant potential generator. The 0.5 and 1 MV curves were obtained with filtration of 2.8 mm of copper, 2.1 mm of brass, and 18.7 mm of water (Wyckoff *et al.* [18]). The 2 MV curve was obtained by extrapolating to broad-beam conditions (E. E. Smith) the data of Evans *et al.* [19]. The inherent filtration was equivalent to 6.8 mm of lead. The 3 MV curve has been obtained by interpolation of the 2 MV curve given herein, and the data of Kirn and Kennedy [21].

[Data courtesy of the authors, Radiology and Nucleonics.]

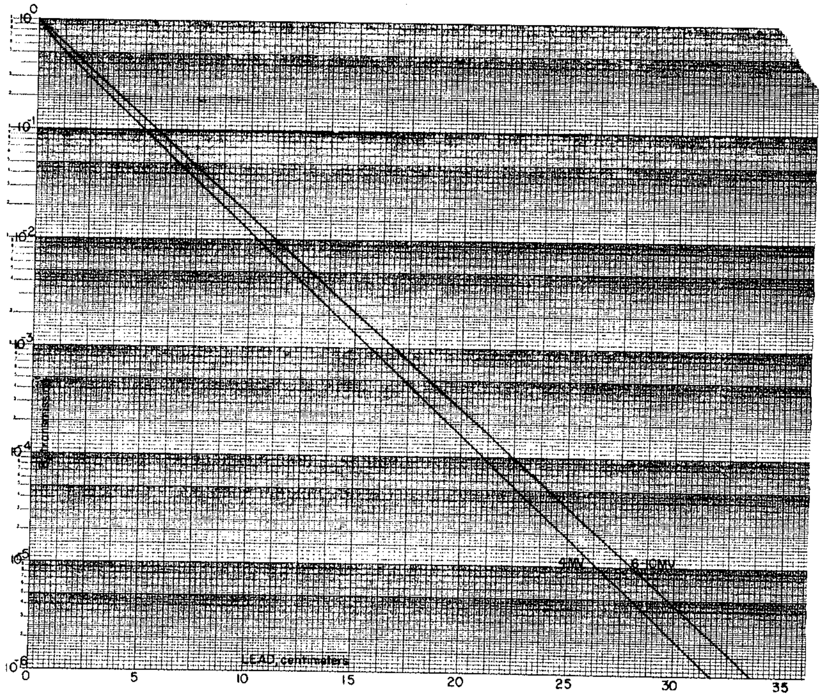


Fig. 6 Transmission through lead of x rays produced at 4 to 10 MV. Based on NCRP Report No. 51 [27].

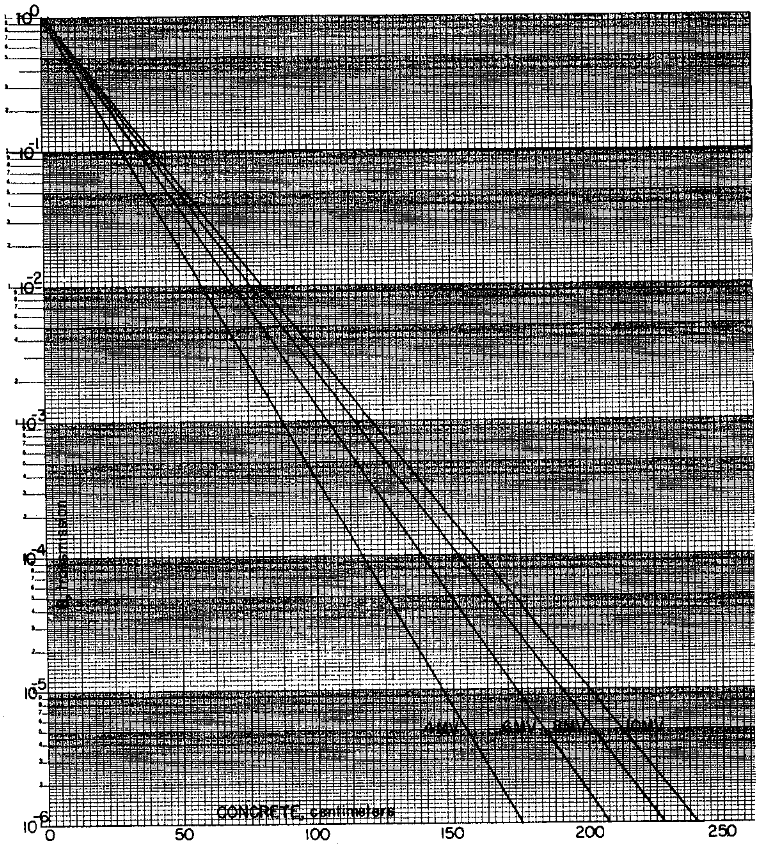


Fig. 7 Transmission through concrete, density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}), of x rays produced at 4 to 10 MV. Based on NCRP Report No. 51 [27].

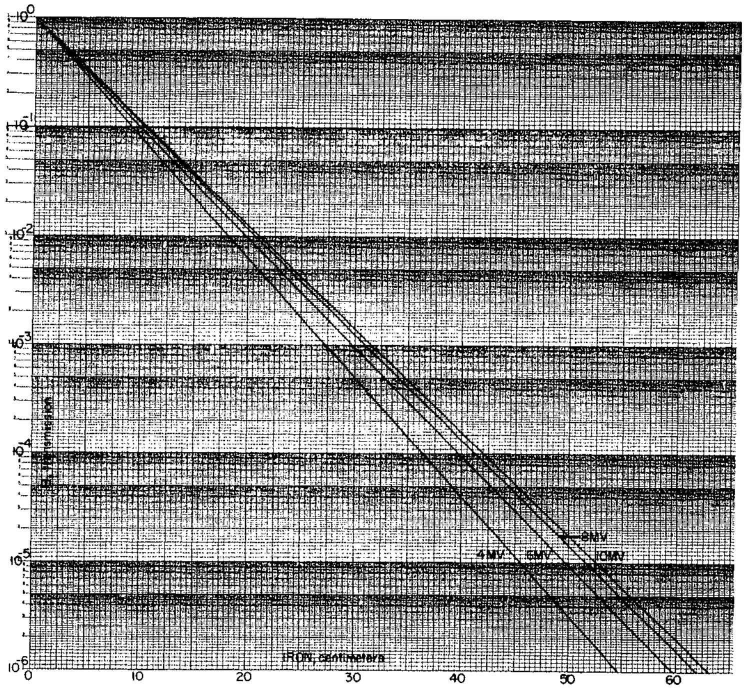


Fig. 8 Transmission through iron, density 7.8 g cm^{-3} (488 lb ft^{-3}), of x rays produced at 4 to 10 MV. Based on NCRP Report No. 51 [27].

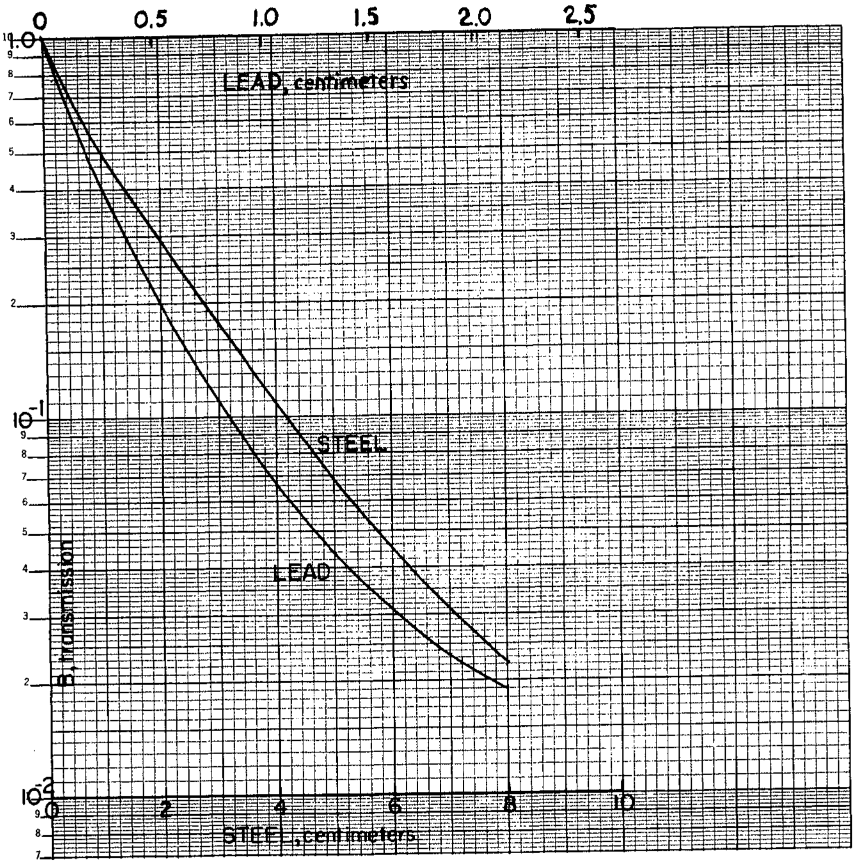


Fig. 9 Transmission through lead and steel of 6 MV primary x rays scattered at 90°.

The measurements were made with 6-MV radiation scattered at 90° from a cylindrical unit density phantom, 27 cm diameter, 30 cm long with its center located 100 cm from the target (Karzmark and Capone [22]).

[Data courtesy of the authors and The British Journal of Radiology.]

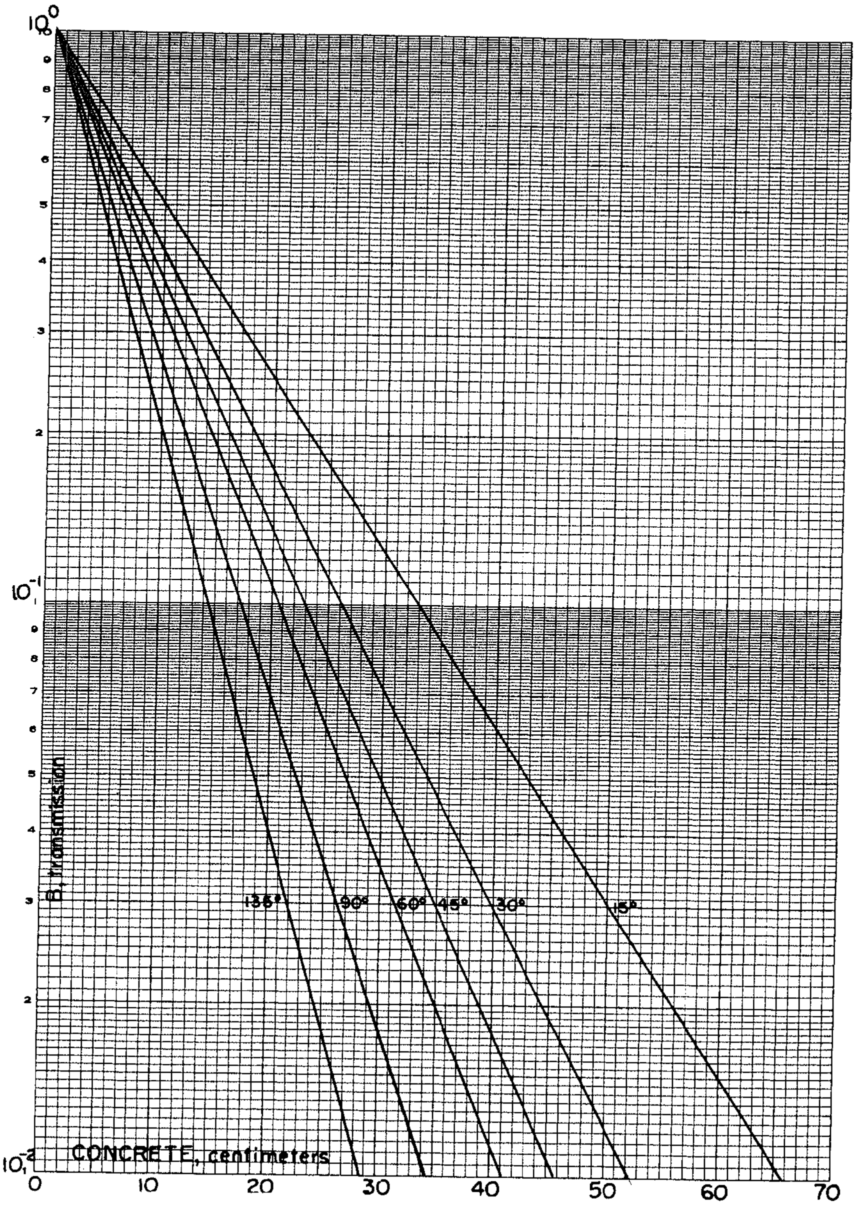


Fig. 10 Transmission through concrete, density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}), for 6 MV primary x rays scattered at six different angles from a unit density phantom.

The measurements were made with 6 MV radiation scattered from a cylindrical unit density phantom, 27 cm diameter, 30 cm long with its center located 100 cm from the target (Karzmark and Capone [22]).

[Data courtesy of the authors and The British Journal of Radiology.]

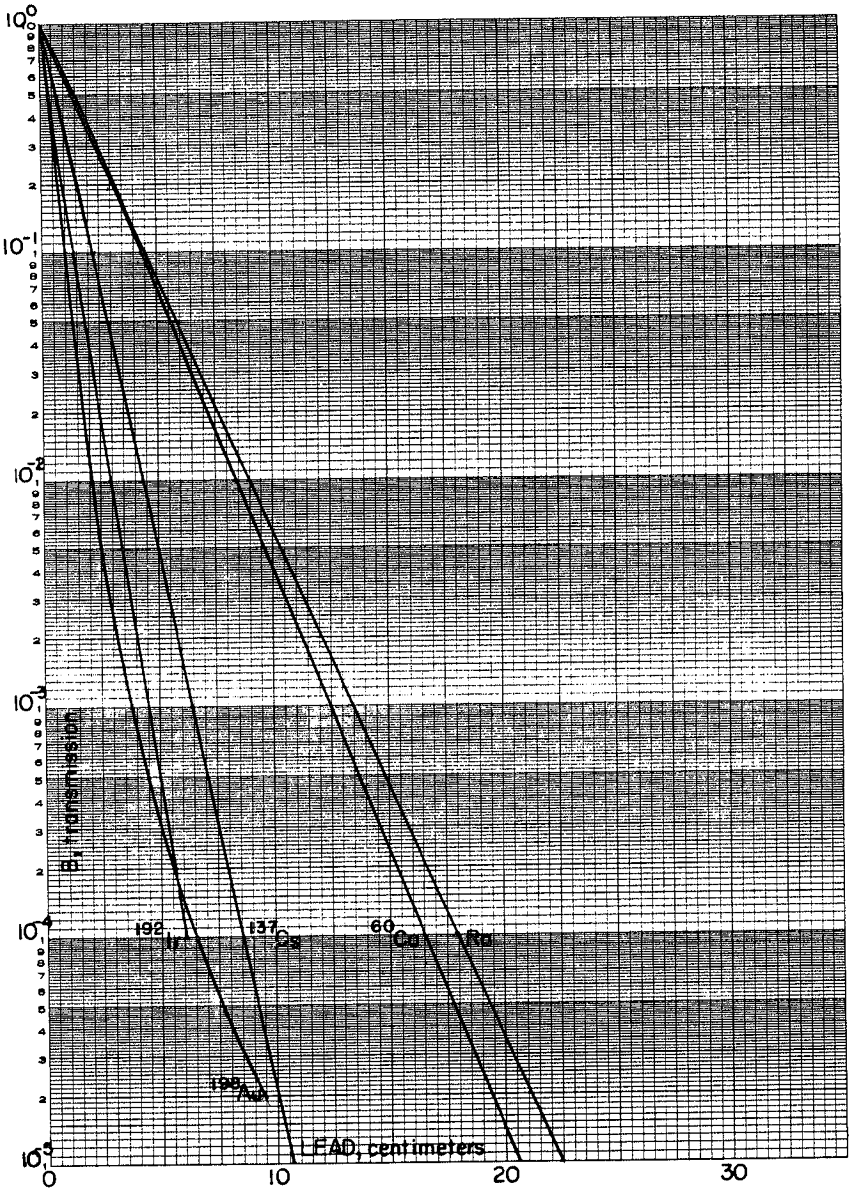


Fig. 11 Transmission through lead of gamma rays from selected radionuclides. Radium (Wyckoff and Kennedy [23]); cobalt-60, cesium-137, gold-198 (Kirn *et al.* [13]); iridium-192 (Ritz [24]).

[Data courtesy of the authors, Radiology, Journal of Research NBS, Non-Destructive Testing (now known as Materials Evaluation) and with permission of The American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Inc.]

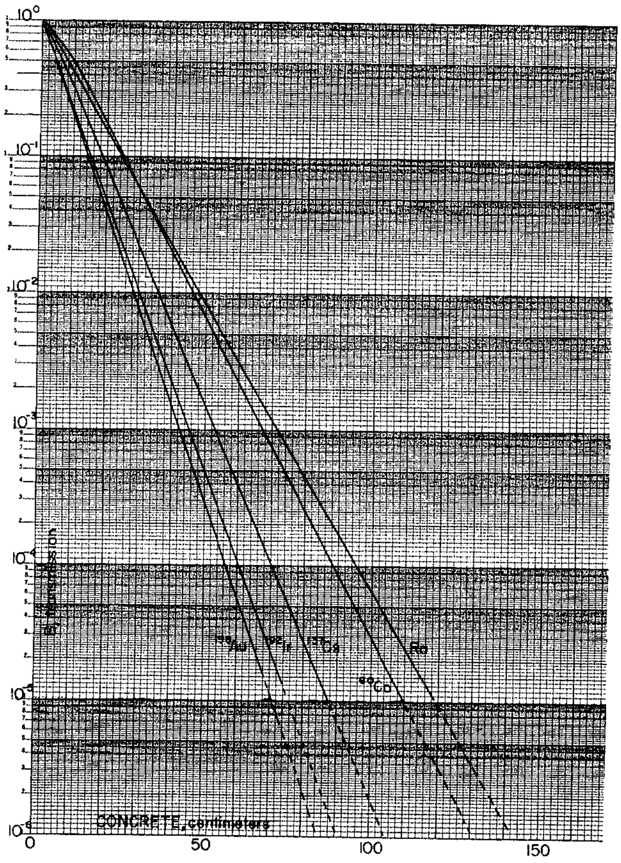


Fig. 12 Transmission through concrete, density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}), of gamma rays from selected radionuclides.

Radium (Wyckoff and Kennedy [23]); cobalt-60, cesium-137, gold-198 (Kirn *et al.* [13]); iridium-192 (Ritz [24]).

[Data courtesy of the authors, Radiology, Journal of Research NBS, Non-Destructive Testing (now known as Materials Evaluation) and with permission of the American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Inc.]

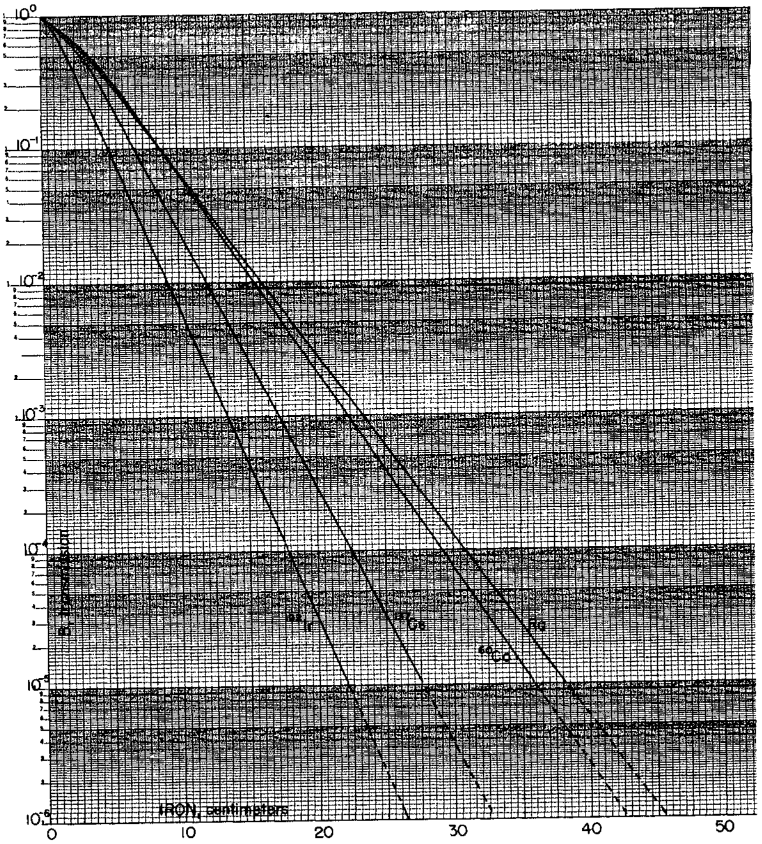


Fig. 13 Transmission through iron of gamma rays from selected radionuclides. Radium (Wyckoff and Kennedy [23]); cobalt-60, cesium-137 (Kirn *et al.* [13]); iridium-192 (Ritz [24]).

[Data courtesy of the authors, Radiology, Journal of Research NBS, Non-Destructive Testing (now known as Materials Evaluation) and with permission of the American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Inc.]

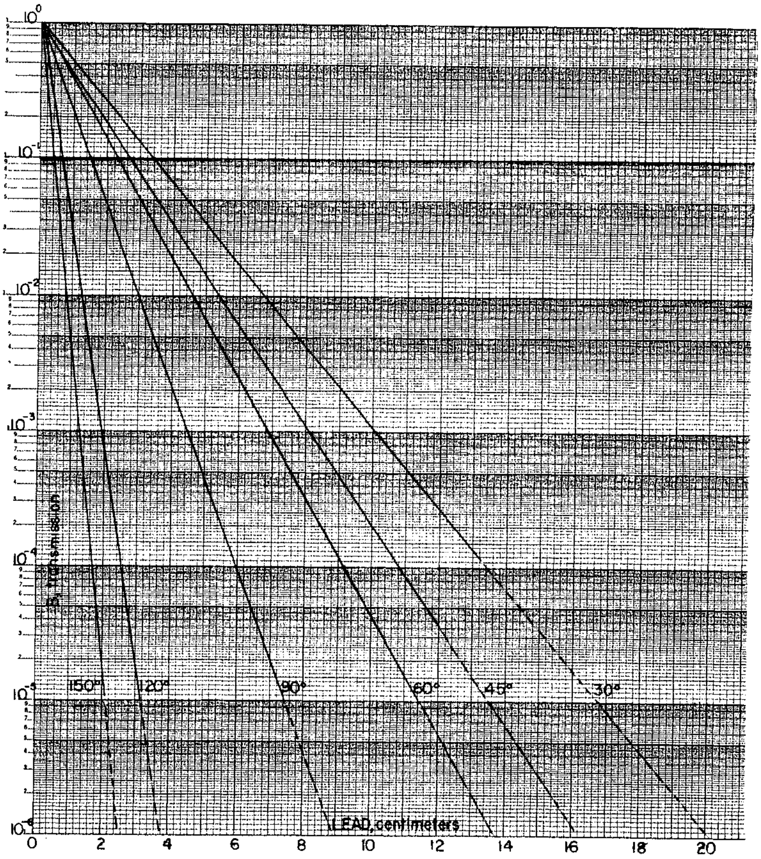


Fig. 14 Transmission through lead of cobalt-60 radiation scattered from a cylindrical unit density phantom, 20 cm diameter field at 1 m from source (Mooney and Braestrup [25]).

[Data courtesy of the authors.]

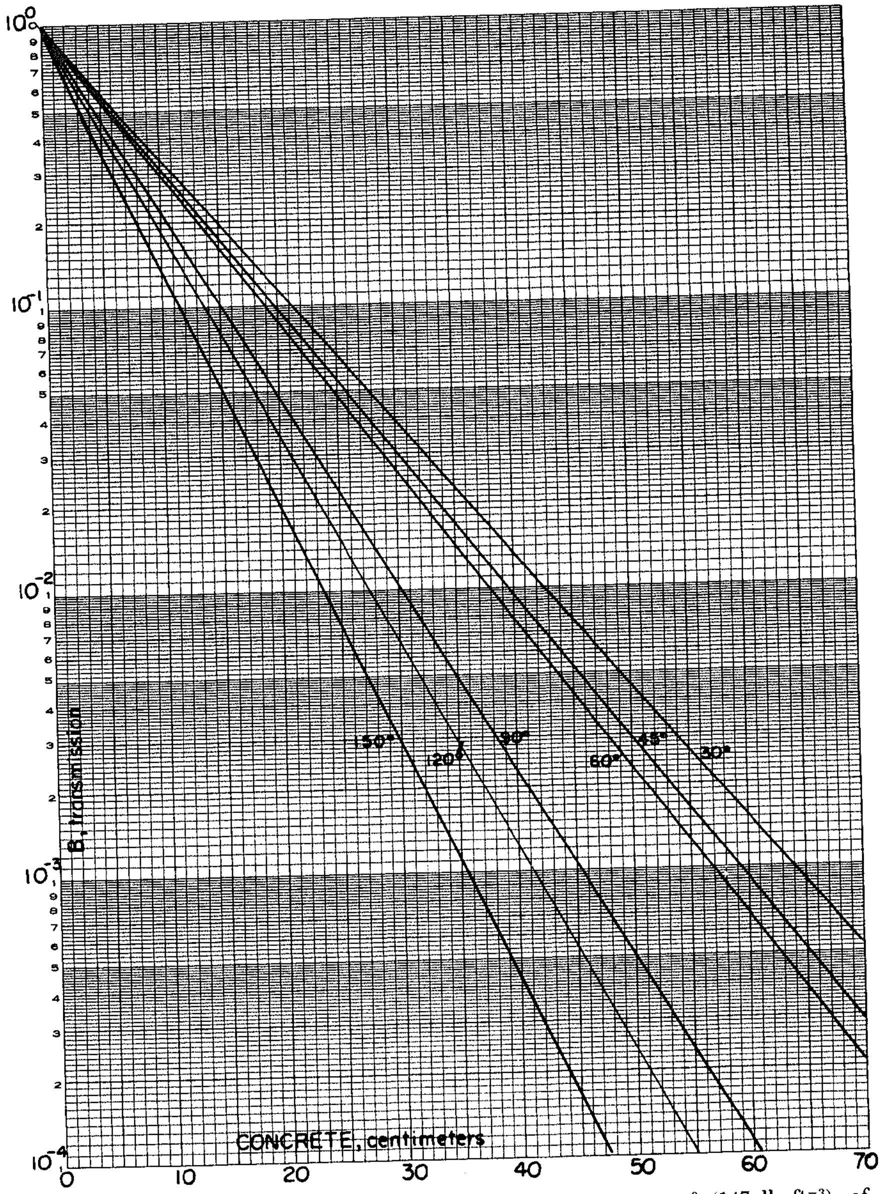


Fig. 15 Transmission through concrete, density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}), of cobalt-60 radiation scattered from a cylindrical unit density phantom, 20 cm diameter field, at 1 m from source (Mooney and Braestrup [25]).

[Data courtesy of the authors.]

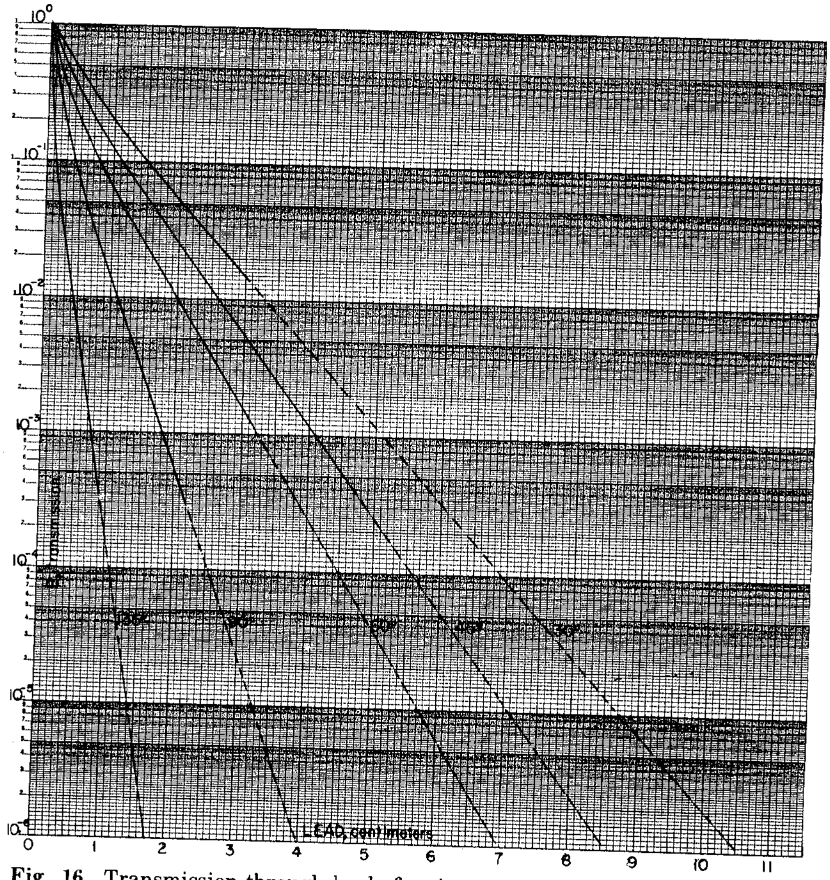


Fig. 16 Transmission through lead of cesium-137 scattered radiation. (Interpolated from Frantz and Wyckoff [26]).
[Data courtesy of the authors and Radiology.]

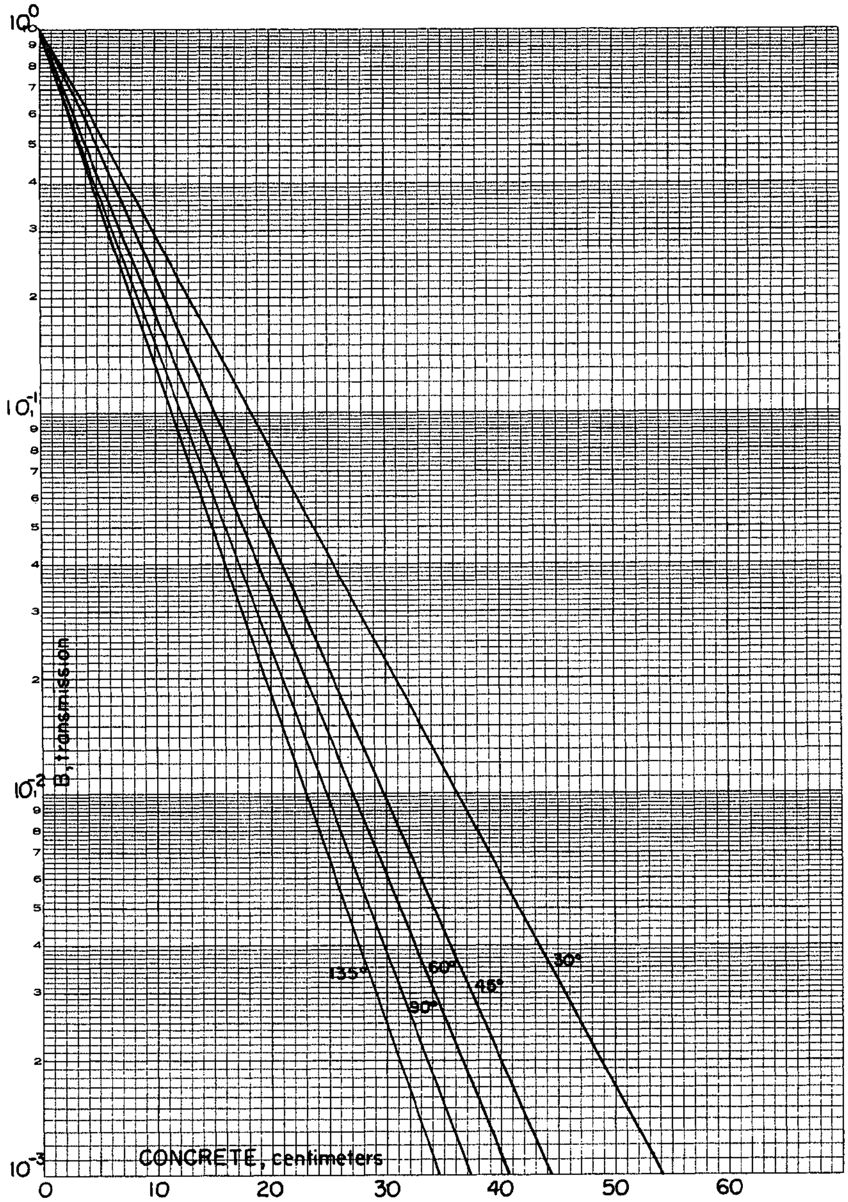


Fig. 17 Transmission through concrete, density 2.35 g cm^{-3} (147 lb ft^{-3}), of cesium-137 scattered radiation (interpolated from Frantz and Wyckoff [26]). [Data courtesy of the authors and Radiology.]

APPENDIX E

Architectual and Equipment Information to be Supplied To the Qualified Expert for Use in Shielding Design

A. Architectural

1. Drawings of radiation rooms and adjacent area; scale preferred $^1/_4$ inch = 1 foot, or larger, including position of radiation source, doors and windows.
2. Information about occupancy below, above and adjacent to radiation rooms.
3. Type of proposed, or existing, construction of floors, ceilings and walls.
4. For megavoltage therapy installations, including cobalt, vertical sections and plot plans.

B. Equipment

1. Below 150 kV.
    a. Purpose: therapy, radiography, fluoroscopy, special procedures, cystoscopy, etc.
    b. kV and expected weekly workload, if known.
2. 150 kV and above, including gamma beam apparatus.
    a. kV, or type of gamma source.
    b. mA or R per minute at 1 meter.
    c. Weekly workload, if known, expressed in mA min, or R at 1 meter.
    d. Restrictions in beam orientations without and with beam interceptor, if any.
    e. Use factor for walls and ceiling, if known.
    f. Leakage radiation of source housing with beam "ON."
    g. Attenuation by beam interceptor, if any.
3. Possible future increases in workload and radiation energy and modification in beam orientation.

References[29]

1. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies up to 10 MeV—Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation,* NCRP Report No. 34 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1970)
2. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Basic Radiation Protection Criteria,* NCRP Report No. 39 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1971)
3. C. B. Braestrup and H. O. Wyckoff, "Shielding design levels for radiology departments," Radiology 107, 445 (1973)
4. C. B. Braestrup and H. O. Wyckoff, *Radiation Protection* (Charles C Thomas, Springfield, Illinois, 1958)
5. E. D. Trout, J. P. Kelly and G. L. Herbert, "X-Ray attenuation in steel—50 to 300 kVp," Health Phys. 29, 165 (1975)
6. E. D. Trout, J. P. Kelley and V. L. Larson, "The use of plate glass as shielding material in diagnostic radiologic installations," J. Canadian Assoc. of Radiologists 25, 173 (1974)
7. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Dental X-Ray Protection,* NCRP Report No. 35 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1970)
8. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Radiation Protection in Veterinary Medicine,* NCRP Report No. 36 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1970)
9. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies up to 10 MeV—Equipment Design and Use,* NCRP Report No. 33 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1968)
10. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Protection Against Radiation from Brachytherapy Sources,* NCRP Report No. 40 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1972)
11. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides,* NCRP Report No. 37 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1970)
12. International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, *Ra-*

---

[29] Information on the availability of NCRP reports listed is given on page 117.

diation Quantities and Units, ICRU Report 19 (International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, Washington, 1971)

13. F. S. KIRN, R. J. KENNEDY AND H. O. WYCKOFF, "Attenuation of gamma rays at oblique incidence," Radiology 63, 94 (1954)
14. C. J. KARZMARK AND T. CAPONE, "Measurements of 6 MV x rays, Part I. Primary radiation absorption in lead, steel and concrete," Brit. J. Radiol. 41, 33 (1968)
15. J. P. KELLEY AND E. D. TROUT, "Broad beam attenuation in lead for x rays from 50 to 300 kVp," Radiology 104, 161 (1972)
16. W. MILLER AND R. J. KENNEDY, "X-ray attenuation in lead, aluminum and concrete in the range 275–525 kV," Radiology 65, 920 (1955)
17. E. D. TROUT, J. P. KELLEY AND A. C. LUCAS, "Broad beam attenuation in concrete for 50 to 300 kVp x rays and in lead for 300 kVp x rays," Radiology 72, 62 (1959)
18. H. O. WYCKOFF, R. J. KENNEDY AND W. R. BRADFORD, "Broad- and narrow-beam attenuation of 500–1,400 kV x rays in lead and concrete," Radiology 51, 849 (1948)
19. W. W. EVANS, R. C. GRANKE, K. A. WRIGHT AND J. G. TRUMP, "Absorption of 2 MeV constant potential roentgen rays by lead and concrete," Radiology 58, 560 (1952) [Curves from this paper were extrapolated to broad beam conditions by E. E. Smith.]
20. W. MILLER AND R. J. KENNEDY, "Attenuation of 86 and 176 MeV synchrotron x rays in concrete and lead," Rad. Research 4, 360 (1956)
21. F. S. KIRN AND R. J. KENNEDY, "Betatron x rays: How much concrete for shielding," Nucleonics 12, No. 6, 44 (1954)
22. C. J. KARZMARK AND T. CAPONE, "Measurements of 6 MV x rays, Part II. Characteristics of secondary radiation," Brit. J. Radiol. 41, 222 (1968)
23. H. O. WYCKOFF AND R. J. KENNEDY, "Concrete as a protective barrier for gamma rays from radium," J. Research NBS 42, 431 (1949)
24. V. H. RITZ, "Broad and narrow beam attenuation of Ir^{192} gamma rays in concrete, steel and lead," Non-Destructive Testing 16, 269 (1958)
25. R. T. MOONEY AND C. B. BRAESTRUP, *Attenuation of Scattered Cobalt-60 Radiation in Lead and Building Materials,* AEC Report NYO 2165 (1957)
26. F. FRANTZ AND H. O. WYCKOFF, "Attenuation of scattered cesium-137 gamma rays," Radiology 73, 263 (1959)
27. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, *Radiation Protection Design Guidelines for 0.1–100 MeV Particle Accelerator Facilities,* NCRP Report No. 51 (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, in preparation)

The NCRP

The National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements is a nonprofit corporation chartered by Congress in 1964 to:

1. Collect, analyze, develop, and disseminate in the public interest information and recommendations about (a) protection against radiation and (b) radiation measurements, quantities, and units, particularly those concerned with radiation protection;
2. Provide a means by which organizations concerned with the scientific and related aspects of radiation protection and of radiation quantities, units, and measurements may cooperate for effective utilization of their combined resources, and to stimulate the work of such organizations;
3. Develop basic concepts about radiation quantities, units, and measurements, about the application of these concepts, and about radiation protection;
4. Cooperate with the International Commission on Radiological Protection, the International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, and other national and international organizations, governmental and private, concerned with radiation quantities, units, and measurements and with radiation protection.

The Council is the successor to the unincorporated association of scientists known as the National Committee on Radiation Protection and Measurements and was formed to carry on the work begun by the Committee.

The Council is made up of the members and the participants who serve on the fifty-four Scientific Committees of the Council. The Scientific Committees, composed of experts having detailed knowledge and competence in the particular area of the Committee's interest, draft proposed recommendations. These are then submitted to the full membership of the Council for careful review and approval before being published.

The following comprise the current officers and membership of the Council:

Officers

President	Lauriston S. Taylor
President-Elect	Warren K. Sinclair
Vice President	E. Dale Trout
Secretary and Treasurer	W. Roger Ney
Assistant Secretary	Eugene R. Fidell
Assistant Treasurer	Harold O. Wyckoff

Members

Seymour Abrahamson
Roy E. Albert
John A. Auxier
William J. Bair
Victor P. Bond
Harold S. Boyne
Robert L. Brent
A. Bertrand Brill
Reynold F. Brown
William W. Burr, Jr.
Melvin W. Carter
George W. Casarett
Randall S. Caswell
Arthur B. Chilton
Stephen Cleary
Cyril L. Comar
Patricia Durbin
Merril Eisenbud
Thomas S. Ely
Asher J. Finkel
Donald C. Fleckenstein
Richard F. Foster
Hymer L. Friedell
Arthur H. Gladstein
Robert A. Goepp
Marvin Goldman
Robert O. Gorson
Arthur W. Guy
Ellis M. Hall
John H. Harley
Robert J. Hasterlik
John W. Healy
John M. Heslep
Marylou Ingram
Seymour Jablon
Jacob Kastner
Edward B. Lewis
Charles W. Mays
Roger O. McClellan
Mortimer Mendelsohn
Dade W. Moeller
Russell H. Morgan
Paul E. Morrow
Robert D. Moseley, Jr.
James V. Neel
Robert J. Nelsen
Peter C. Nowell
Frank Parker
Herbert M. Parker
Chester R. Richmond
Lester Rogers
Harald H. Rossi
Robert E. Rowland
William L. Russell
John H. Rust
Eugene L. Saenger
Harry F. Schulte
Raymond Seltser
Warren K. Sinclair
Walter S. Snyder
Lewis V. Spencer
J. Newell Stannard
Chauncey Starr
John B. Storer
Lauriston S. Taylor
Roy C. Thompson
E. Dale Trout
Arthur C. Upton
John C. Villforth
George L. Voelz
Niel Wald
Edward W. Webster
George M. Wilkening
Harold O. Wyckoff

Honorary Members

Edgar C. Barnes
Carl B. Braestrup
Austin M. Brues
Frederick P. Cowan
Robley D. Evans
Paul C. Hodges
George V. LeRoy
Karl Z. Morgan
Edith H. Quimby
Shields Warren

Currently, the following Scientific Committees are actively engaged in formulating recommendations:

SC-1: Basic Radiation Protection Criteria
SC-7: Monitoring Methods and Instruments
SC-11: Incineration of Radioactive Waste
SC-18: Standards and Measurements of Radioactivity for Radiological Use
SC-22: Radiation Shielding for Particle Accelerators
SC-23: Radiation Hazards Resulting from the Release of Radionuclides into the Environment
SC-24: Radionuclides and Labeled Organic Compounds Incorporated in Genetic Material
SC-25: Radiation Protection in the Use of Small Neutron Generators
SC-26: High Energy X-Ray Dosimetry
SC-28: Radiation Exposure from Consumer Products
SC-30: Physical and Biological Properties of Radionuclides
SC-31: Selected Occupational Exposure Problems Arising from Internal Emitters
SC-32: Administered Radioactivity
SC-33: Dose Calculations
SC-34: Maximum Permissible Concentrations for Occupational and Non-Occupational Exposures
SC-35: Environmental Radiation Measurements
SC-37: Procedures for the Management of Contaminated Persons
SC-38: Waste Disposal
SC-39: Microwaves
SC-40: Biological Aspects of Radiation Protection Criteria
SC-41: Radiation Resulting from Nuclear Power Generation
SC-42: Industrial Applications of X Rays and Sealed Sources
SC-44: Radiation Associated with Medical Examinations
SC-45: Radiation Received by Radiation Employees
SC-46: Operational Radiation Safety
SC-47: Instrumentation for the Determination of Dose Equivalent
SC-48: Apportionment of Radiation Exposure
SC-50: Surface Contamination
SC-51: Radiation Protection in Pediatric Radiology and Nuclear Medicine Applied to Children
SC-52: Conceptual Basis of Calculations of Dose Distributions
SC-53: Biological Effects and Exposure Criteria for Radiofrequency Electromagnetic Radiation
SC-54: Bioassay for Assessment of Control of Intake of Radionuclides

In recognition of its responsibility to facilitate and stimulate cooperation among organizations concerned with the scientific and related aspects of radiation protection and measurement, the Council has created a category of NCRP Collaborating Organizations. Organizations or groups of organizations which are national or international in scope and are concerned with scientific problems involving radiation quantities, units, measurements and effects, or radiation protection may be admitted to collaborating status by the Council.

The present Collaborating Organizations with which the NCRP maintains liaison are as follows:

American Academy of Dermatology
American Association of Physicists in Medicine
American College of Radiology
American Dental Association
American Industrial Hygiene Association
American Insurance Association
American Medical Association
American Nuclear Society
American Occupational Medical Association
Amdrican Podiatry Association
American Public Health Association
American Radium Society
American Roentgen Ray Society
American Society of Radiologic Technologists
American Veterinary Medical Association
Association of University Radiologists
Atomic Industrial Forum
College of American Pathologists
Defense Civil Preparedness Agency
Genetics Society of America
Health Physics Society
National Bureau of Standards
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Radiation Research Society
Radiological Society of North America
Society of Nuclear Medicine
United States Air Force
United States Army
United States Energy Research and Development Administration
United States Environmental Protection Agency
United States Navy
United States Nuclear Regulatory Commission
United States Public Health Service

The NCRP has found its relationships with these organizations to be extremely valuable to continued progress in its program.

The Council's activities are made possible by the voluntary contribution of the time and effort of its members and participants and the generous support of the following organizations:

Alfred P. Sloan Foundation
American Academy of Dental Radiology
American Academy of Dermatology
American Association of Physicists in Medicine
American College of Radiology
American College of Radiology Foundation
American Dental Association
American Industrial Hygiene Association
American Insurance Association
American Medical Association
American Mutual Insurance Alliance
American Nuclear Society
American Occupational Medical Association
American Osteopathic College of Radiology
American Podiatry Association
American Public Health Association
American Radium Society
American Roentgen Ray Society
American Society of Radiologic Technologists
American Veterinary Medical Association
American Veterinary Radiology Society
Association of University Radiologists
Atomic Industrial Forum
Battelle Memorial Institute
College of American Pathologists
Defense Civil Preparedness Agency
Edward Mallinckrodt, Jr. Foundation
Genetics Society of America
Health Physics Society
James Picker Foundation
National Association of Photographic Manufacturers
National Bureau of Standards
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Radiation Research Society
Radiological Society of North America
Society of Nuclear Medicine
United States Energy Research and Development Administration
United States Environmental Protection Agency
United States Public Health Service

To all of these organizations the Council expresses its profound appreciation for their support.

Initial funds for publication of NCRP reports were provided by a grant from the James Picker Foundation and for this the Council wishes to express its deep appreciation.

The NCRP seeks to promulgate information and recommendations based on leading scientific judgment on matters of radiation protection and measurement and to foster cooperation among organizations concerned with these matters. These efforts are intended to serve the public interest and the Council welcomes comments and suggestions on its reports or activities from those interested in its work.

NCRP Publications

NCRP publications are distributed by the NCRP Publications Office. Information on prices and how to order may be obtained by directing an inquiry to:

NCRP Publications
7910 Woodmont Avenue
Suite 800
Bethesda, MD 20814-3095

The currently available publications are listed below.

NCRP Reports

No.	Title
8	*Control and Removal of Radioactive Contamination in Laboratories* (1951)
22	*Maximum Permissible Body Burdens and Maximum Permissible Concentrations of Radionuclides in Air and in Water for Occupational Exposure* (1959) [Includes Addendum 1 issued in August 1963]
23	*Measurement of Neutron Flux and Spectra for Physical and Biological Applications* (1960)
25	*Measurement of Absorbed Dose of Neutrons, and of Mixtures of Neutrons and Gamma Rays* (1961)
27	*Stopping Powers for Use with Cavity Chambers* (1961)
30	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Materials* (1964)
32	*Radiation Protection in Educational Institutions* (1966)
35	*Dental X-Ray Protection* (1970)
36	*Radiation Protection in Veterinary Medicine* (1970)
37	*Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides* (1970)
38	*Protection Against Neutron Radiation* (1971)
40	*Protection Against Radiation from Brachytherapy Sources* (1972)
41	*Specification of Gamma-Ray Brachytherapy Sources* (1974)
42	*Radiological Factors Affecting Decision-Making in a Nuclear Attack* (1974)
44	*Krypton-85 in the Atmosphere—Accumulation, Biological Significance, and Control Technology* (1975)

46 *Alpha-Emitting Particles in Lungs* (1975)
47 *Tritium Measurement Techniques* (1976)
49 *Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation for Medical Use of X Rays and Gamma Rays of Energies Up to 10 MeV* (1976)
50 *Environmental Radiation Measurements* (1976)
51 *Radiation Protection Design Guidelines for 0.1-100 MeV Particle Accelerator Facilities* (1977)
52 *Cesium-137 from the Environment to Man: Metabolism and Dose* (1977)
54 *Medical Radiation Exposure of Pregnant and Potentially Pregnant Women* (1977)
55 *Protection of the Thyroid Gland in the Event of Releases of Radioiodine* (1977)
57 *Instrumentation and Monitoring Methods for Radiation Protection* (1978)
58 *A Handbook of Radioactivity Measurements Procedures*, 2nd ed. (1985)
59 *Operational Radiation Safety Program* (1978)
60 *Physical, Chemical, and Biological Properties of Radiocerium Relevant to Radiation Protection Guidelines* (1978)
61 *Radiation Safety Training Criteria for Industrial Radiography* (1978)
62 *Tritium in the Environment* (1979)
63 *Tritium and Other Radionuclide Labeled Organic Compounds Incorporated in Genetic Material* (1979)
64 *Influence of Dose and Its Distribution in Time on Dose-Response Relationships for Low-LET Radiations* (1980)
65 *Management of Persons Accidentally Contaminated with Radionuclides* (1980)
67 *Radiofrequency Electromagnetic Fields—Properties, Quantities and Units, Biophysical Interaction, and Measurements* (1981)
68 *Radiation Protection in Pediatric Radiology* (1981)
69 *Dosimetry of X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Beams for Radiation Therapy in the Energy Range 10 keV to 50 MeV* (1981)
70 *Nuclear Medicine—Factors Influencing the Choice and Use of Radionuclides in Diagnosis and Therapy* (1982)
71 *Operational Radiation Safety—Training* (1983)
72 *Radiation Protection and Measurement for Low-Voltage Neutron Generators* (1983)
73 *Protection in Nuclear Medicine and Ultrasound Diagnostic Procedures in Children* (1983)

74 *Biological Effects of Ultrasound: Mechanisms and Clinical Implications* (1983)
75 *Iodine-129: Evaluation of Releases from Nuclear Power Generation* (1983)
76 *Radiological Assessment: Predicting the Transport, Bioaccumulation, and Uptake by Man of Radionuclides Released to the Environment* (1984)
77 *Exposures from the Uranium Series with Emphasis on Radon and Its Daughters* (1984)
78 *Evaluation of Occupational and Environmental Exposures to Radon and Radon Daughters in the United States* (1984)
79 *Neutron Contamination from Medical Electron Accelerators* (1984)
80 *Induction of Thyroid Cancer by Ionizing Radiation* (1985)
81 *Carbon-14 in the Environment* (1985)
82 *SI Units in Radiation Protection and Measurements* (1985)
83 *The Experimental Basis for Absorbed-Dose Calculations in Medical Uses of Radionuclides* (1985)
84 *General Concepts for the Dosimetry of Internally Deposited Radionuclides* (1985)
85 *Mammography—A User's Guide* (1986)
86 *Biological Effects and Exposure Criteria for Radiofrequency Electromagnetic Fields* (1986)
87 *Use of Bioassay Procedures for Assessment of Internal Radionuclide Deposition* (1987)
88 *Radiation Alarms and Access Control Systems* (1986)
89 *Genetic Effects from Internally Deposited Radionuclides* (1987)
90 *Neptunium: Radiation Protection Guidelines* (1988)
92 *Public Radiation Exposure from Nuclear Power Generation in the United States* (1987)
93 *Ionizing Radiation Exposure of the Population of the United States* (1987)
94 *Exposure of the Population in the United States and Canada from Natural Background Radiation* (1987)
95 *Radiation Exposure of the U.S. Population from Consumer Products and Miscellaneous Sources* (1987)
96 *Comparative Carcinogenicity of Ionizing Radiation and Chemicals* (1989)
97 *Measurement of Radon and Radon Daughters in Air* (1988)
98 *Guidance on Radiation Received in Space Activities* (1989)
99 *Quality Assurance for Diagnostic Imaging* (1988)
100 *Exposure of the U.S. Population from Diagnostic Medical Radiation* (1989)

101 *Exposure of the U.S. Population from Occupational Radiation* (1989)
102 *Medical X-Ray, Electron Beam and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies Up to 50 MeV (Equipment Design, Performance and Use)* (1989)
103 *Control of Radon in Houses* (1989)
104 *The Relative Biological Effectiveness of Radiations of Different Quality* (1990)
105 *Radiation Protection for Medical and Allied Health Personnel* (1989)
106 *Limit for Exposure to "Hot Particles" on the Skin* (1989)
107 *Implementation of the Principle of As Low As Reasonably Achievable (ALARA) for Medical and Dental Personnel* (1990)
108 *Conceptual Basis for Calculations of Absorbed-Dose Distributions* (1991)
109 *Effects of Ionizing Radiation on Aquatic Organisms* (1991)
110 *Some Aspects of Strontium Radiobiology* (1991)
111 *Developing Radiation Emergency Plans for Academic, Medical or Industrial Facilities* (1991)
112 *Calibration of Survey Instruments Used in Radiation Protection for the Assessment of Ionizing Radiation Fields and Radioactive Surface Contamination* (1991)
113 *Exposure Criteria for Medical Diagnostic Ultrasound: I. Criteria Based on Thermal Mechanisms* (1992)
114 *Maintaining Radiation Protection Records* (1992)
115 *Risk Estimates for Radiation Protection* (1993)
116 *Limitation of Exposure to Ionizing Radiation* (1993)
117 *Research Needs for Radiation Protection* (1993)
118 *Radiation Protection in the Mineral Extraction Industry* (1993)
119 *A Practical Guide to the Determination of Human Exposure to Radiofrequency Fields* (1993)

Binders for NCRP reports are available. Two sizes make it possible to collect into small binders the "old series" of reports (NCRP Reports Nos. 8-30) and into large binders the more recent publications (NCRP Reports Nos. 32-119). Each binder will accommodate from five to seven reports. The binders carry the identification "NCRP Reports" and come with label holders which permit the user to attach labels showing the reports contained in each binder.

The following bound sets of NCRP reports are also available:

Volume I.	NCRP Reports Nos. 8, 22
Volume II.	NCRP Reports Nos. 23, 25, 27, 30

Volume III.	NCRP Reports Nos. 32, 35, 36, 37
Volume IV.	NCRP Reports Nos. 38, 40, 41
Volume V.	NCRP Reports Nos. 42, 44, 46
Volume VI.	NCRP Reports Nos. 47, 49, 50, 51
Volume VII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 52, 53, 54, 55, 57
Volume VIII.	NCRP Report No. 58
Volume IX.	NCRP Reports Nos. 59, 60, 61, 62, 63
Volume X.	NCRP Reports Nos. 64, 65, 66, 67
Volume XI.	NCRP Reports Nos. 68, 69, 70, 71, 72
Volume XII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 73, 74, 75, 76
Volume XIII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 77, 78, 79, 80
Volume XIV.	NCRP Reports Nos. 81, 82, 83, 84, 85
Volume XV.	NCRP Reports Nos. 86, 87, 88, 89
Volume XVI.	NCRP Reports Nos. 90, 91, 92, 93
Volume XVII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 94, 95, 96, 97
Volume XVIII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 98, 99, 100
Volume XIX.	NCRP Reports Nos. 101, 102, 103, 104
Volume XX.	NCRP Reports Nos. 105, 106, 107, 108
Volume XXI.	NCRP Reports Nos. 109, 110, 111
Volume XXII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 112, 113, 114
Volume XXIII.	NCRP Reports Nos. 115, 116, 117, 118

(Titles of the individual reports contained in each volume are given above.)

NCRP Commentaries

No.	Title
1	*Krypton-85 in the Atmosphere—With Specific Reference to the Public Health Significance of the Proposed Controlled Release at Three Mile Island* (1980)
2	*Preliminary Evaluation of Criteria for the Disposal of Transuranic Contaminated Waste* (1982)
3	*Screening Techniques for Determining Compliance with Environmental Standards—Releases of Radionuclides to the Atmosphere* (1986), Revised (1989)
4	*Guidelines for the Release of Waste Water from Nuclear Facilities with Special Reference to the Public Health Significance of the Proposed Release of Treated Waste Waters at Three Mile Island* (1987)
5	*Review of the Publication, Living Without Landfills* (1989)
6	*Radon Exposure of the U.S. Population—Status of the Problem* (1991)

7	*Misadministration of Radioactive Material in Medicine—Scientific Background* (1991)
8	*Uncertainty in NCRP Screening Models Relating to Atmospheric Transport, Deposition and Uptake by Humans* (1993)

Proceedings of the Annual Meeting

No.	Title
1	*Perceptions of Risk*, Proceedings of the Fifteenth Annual Meeting held on March 14-15, 1979 (including Taylor Lecture No. 3) (1980)
3	*Critical Issues in Setting Radiation Dose Limits*, Proceedings of the Seventeenth Annual Meeting held on April 8-9, 1981 (including Taylor Lecture No. 5) (1982)
4	*Radiation Protection and New Medical Diagnostic Approaches*, Proceedings of the Eighteenth Annual Meeting held on April 6-7, 1982 (including Taylor Lecture No. 6) (1983)
5	*Environmental Radioactivity*, Proceedings of the Nineteenth Annual Meeting held on April 6-7, 1983 (including Taylor Lecture No. 7) (1983)
6	*Some Issues Important in Developing Basic Radiation Protection Recommendations*, Proceedings of the Twentieth Annual Meeting held on April 4-5, 1984 (including Taylor Lecture No. 8) (1985)
7	*Radioactive Waste*, Proceedings of the Twenty-first Annual Meeting held on April 3-4, 1985 (including Taylor Lecture No. 9) (1986)
8	*Nonionizing Electromagnetic Radiations and Ultrasound*, Proceedings of the Twenty-second Annual Meeting held on April 2-3, 1986 (including Taylor Lecture No. 10) (1988)
9	*New Dosimetry at Hiroshima and Nagasaki and Its Implications for Risk Estimates*, Proceedings of the Twenty-third Annual Meeting held on April 8-9, 1987 (including Taylor Lecture No. 11) (1988)
10	*Radon*, Proceedings of the Twenty-fourth Annual Meeting held on March 30-31, 1988 (including Taylor Lecture No. 12) (1989)
11	*Radiation Protection Today—The NCRP at Sixty Years*, Proceedings of the Twenty-fifth Annual Meeting held on April 5-6, 1989 (including Taylor Lecture No. 13) (1990)

12 *Health and Ecological Implications of Radioactively Contaminated Environments*, Proceedings of the Twenty-sixth Annual Meeting held on April 4-5, 1990 (including Taylor Lecture No. 14) (1991)

13 *Genes, Cancer and Radiation Protection*, Proceedings of the Twenty-seventh Annual Meeting held on April 3-4, 1991 (including Taylor Lecture No. 15) (1992)

14 *Radiation Protection in Medicine*, Proceedings of the Twenty-eighth Annual Meeting held on April 1-2, 1992 (including Taylor Lecture No.16) (1993)

Lauriston S. Taylor Lectures

No.	Title
1	*The Squares of the Natural Numbers in Radiation Protection* by Herbert M. Parker (1977)
2	*Why be Quantitative about Radiation Risk Estimates?* by Sir Edward Pochin (1978)
3	*Radiation Protection—Concepts and Trade Offs* by Hymer L. Friedell (1979) [Available also in *Perceptions of Risk*, see above]
4	*From "Quantity of Radiation" and "Dose" to "Exposure" and "Absorbed Dose"—An Historical Review* by Harold O. Wyckoff (1980)
5	*How Well Can We Assess Genetic Risk? Not Very* by James F. Crow (1981) [Available also in *Critical Issues in Setting Radiation Dose Limits*, see above]
6	*Ethics, Trade-offs and Medical Radiation* by Eugene L. Saenger (1982) [Available also in *Radiation Protection and New Medical Diagnostic Approaches*, see above]
7	*The Human Environment—Past, Present and Future* by Merril Eisenbud (1983) [Available also in *Environmental Radioactivity*, see above]
8	*Limitation and Assessment in Radiation Protection* by Harald H. Rossi (1984) [Available also in *Some Issues Important in Developing Basic Radiation Protection Recommendations*, see above]
9	*Truth (and Beauty) in Radiation Measurement* by John H. Harley (1985) [Available also in *Radioactive Waste*, see above]
10	*Biological Effects of Non-ionizing Radiations: Cellular Properties and Interactions* by Herman P. Schwan (1987) [Available also in *Nonionizing Electromagnetic Radiations and Ultrasound*, see above]

11 *How to be Quantitative about Radiation Risk Estimates* by Seymour Jablon (1988) [Available also in *New Dosimetry at Hiroshima and Nagasaki and its Implications for Risk Estimates*, see above]

12 *How Safe is Safe Enough?* by Bo Lindell (1988) [Available also in *Radon*, see above]

13 *Radiobiology and Radiation Protection: The Past Century and Prospects for the Future* by Arthur C. Upton (1989) [Available also in *Radiation Protection Today*, see above]

14 *Radiation Protection and the Internal Emitter Saga* by J. Newell Stannard (1990) [Available also in *Health and Ecological Implications of Radioactively Contaminated Environments*, see above]

15 *When is a Dose Not a Dose?* by Victor P. Bond (1992) [Available also in *Genes, Cancer and Radiation Protection*, see above]

16 *Dose and Risk in Diagnostic Radiology: How Big? How Little?* by Edward W. Webster (1992)[Available also in *Radiation Protection in Medicine*, see above]

17 *Science, Radiation Protection and the NCRP* by Warren K. Sinclair (1993)

Symposium Proceedings

The Control of Exposure of the Public to Ionizing Radiation in the Event of Accident or Attack, Proceedings of a Symposium held April 27-29, 1981 (1982)

NCRP Statements

No.	Title
1	"Blood Counts, Statement of the National Committee on Radiation Protection," Radiology **63**, 428 (1954)
2	"Statements on Maximum Permissible Dose from Television Receivers and Maximum Permissible Dose to the Skin of the Whole Body," Am. J. Roentgenol., Radium Ther. and Nucl. Med. **84**, 152 (1960) and Radiology **75**, 122 (1960)
3	*X-Ray Protection Standards for Home Television Receivers, Interim Statement of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements* (1968)
4	*Specification of Units of Natural Uranium and Natural Thorium, Statement of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements,* (1973)

5	*NCRP Statement on Dose Limit for Neutrons* (1980)
6	*Control of Air Emissions of Radionuclides* (1984)
7	*The Probability That a Particular Malignancy May Have Been Caused by a Specified Irradiation* (1992)

Other Documents

The following documents of the NCRP were published outside of the NCRP Report, Commentary and Statement series:

Somatic Radiation Dose for the General Population, Report of the Ad Hoc Committee of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, 6 May 1959, Science, February 19, 1960, Vol. 131, No. 3399, pages 482-486

Dose Effect Modifying Factors In Radiation Protection, Report of Subcommittee M-4 (Relative Biological Effectiveness) of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Report BNL 50073 (T-471) (1967) Brookhaven National Laboratory (National Technical Information Service Springfield, Virginia)

The following documents are now superseded and/or out of print:

NCRP Reports

No.	Title
1	*X-Ray Protection* (1931) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 3]
2	*Radium Protection* (1934) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 4]
3	*X-Ray Protection* (1936) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 6]
4	*Radium Protection (1938)* [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 13]
5	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Luminous Compound* (1941) [Out of Print]
6	*Medical X-Ray Protection Up to Two Million Volts* (1949) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 18]
7	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Isotopes* (1949) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 30]
9	*Recommendations for Waste Disposal of Phosphorus-32 and Iodine-131 for Medical Users* (1951) [Out of Print]
10	*Radiological Monitoring Methods and Instruments* (1952) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 57]
11	*Maximum Permissible Amounts of Radioisotopes in the Human Body and Maximum Permissible Concentrations in Air and Water* (1953) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 22]
12	*Recommendations for the Disposal of Carbon-14 Wastes* (1953) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 81]

13 *Protection Against Radiations from Radium, Cobalt-60 and Cesium-137* (1954) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 24]

14 *Protection Against Betatron-Synchrotron Radiations Up to 100 Million Electron Volts* (1954) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 51]

15 *Safe Handling of Cadavers Containing Radioactive Isotopes* (1953) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 21]

16 *Radioactive-Waste Disposal in the Ocean* (1954) [Out of Print]

17 *Permissible Dose from External Sources of Ionizing Radiation* (1954) including *Maximum Permissible Exposures to Man, Addendum to National Bureau of Standards Handbook 59* (1958) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 39]

18 *X-Ray Protection* (1955) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 26]

19 *Regulation of Radiation Exposure by Legislative Means* (1955) [Out of Print]

20 *Protection Against Neutron Radiation Up to 30 Million Electron Volts* (1957) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 38]

21 *Safe Handling of Bodies Containing Radioactive Isotopes* (1958) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 37]

24 *Protection Against Radiations from Sealed Gamma Sources* (1960) [Superseded by NCRP Reports No. 33, 34 and 40]

26 *Medical X-Ray Protection Up to Three Million Volts* (1961) [Superseded by NCRP Reports No. 33, 34, 35 and 36]

28 *A Manual of Radioactivity Procedures* (1961) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 58]

29 *Exposure to Radiation in an Emergency* (1962) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 42]

31 *Shielding for High-Energy Electron Accelerator Installations* (1964) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 51]

33 *Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies up to 10 MeV—Equipment Design and Use* (1968) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 102]

34 *Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies Up to 10 MeV—Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation Handbook* (1970) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 49]

39 *Basic Radiation Protection Criteria* (1971) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 91]

43 *Review of the Current State of Radiation Protection Philosophy* (1975) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 91]

45 *Natural Background Radiation in the United States* (1975) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 94]

48 *Radiation Protection for Medical and Allied Health Personnel* (1976) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 105]

53	*Review of NCRP Radiation Dose Limit for Embryo and Fetus in Occupationally-Exposed Women* (1977) [Out of Print]
56	*Radiation Exposure from Consumer Products and Miscellaneous Sources* (1977) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 95]
58	*A Handbook of Radioactivity Measurements Procedures*, 1st ed. (1978) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 58, 2nd ed.]
66	*Mammography* (1980) [Out of Print]
91	*Recommendations on Limits for Exposure to Ionizing Radiation* (1987) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 116]

NCRP Proceedings

No.	Title
2	*Quantitative Risk in Standards Setting*, Proceedings of the Sixteenth Annual Meeting held on April 2-3, 1980 [Out of Print]

Index

Absorbed dose, 44
Access to radiation room, 21
  Doors, 21
  Maze, 21
Access to treatment room, 32
Activity, 44
Alternate methods of providing radiation protection, 2
Angle of obliquity, 53
Architectural and equipment information to be supplied to the qualified expert, 108
Assessment of the design and construction, 2
Attenuation, 44
Attenuation in concrete of x rays produced by potentials of 50 to 400 kV, 93
Attenuation in concrete of x rays produced by potentials of 0.5 to 3 MV constant potential, 95
Attenuation in lead of x rays produced by potentials of 50 to 200 kV peak, 91
Attenuation in lead of x rays produced by potentials of 250 to 400 kV, 92
Attenuation in lead of x rays produced by potentials of 0.5 to 3 MV constant potential, 94

Baffles, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19
  Materials, 17
Baffle designs, 15
Barium plaster, 11
Barium sulphate (natural barite), 86
Barrier, 44
Barrier between the individual or object and the source of radiation, 84
Barrier requirements, 6, 7
  Special cases, 6
  Typical radiation installations, 6
  Two or more sources, 7
Barrier thickness, 50
Barrier thickness requirements, 4
Barytes concrete, 86
Beam interceptor, 36
Beam-ON time, 50
B_{Lg}, 50, 54, 55
B_{Lx}, 50, 54, 55
Brachytherapy, 38, 39, 44
  L-Blocks, 39
  Local shielding, 39
Brachytherapy sources, 38, 39
  Storage, 38
  Storage room, 38
  Storage safes, 38
  Transmission factor, B, 38, 39
  Workroom, 38
Brick, 10, 21
Broad beam attenuation in concrete for the 6 MV x rays scattered at six different angles, 100
B_{sg}, 50, 60
B_{sx}, 50
B_{ug}, 50, 52
Building materials, 30
B_{ux}, 50, 52

Cardiovascular radiology, 19
Cesium-137 shielding requirements, 84, 85, 89
Choice between lead and concrete, 3
Choice of shielding material, 8
Ci, 44
Cinder blocks, 11
Colbalt-60 shielding requirements, 82, 83 89
Collimator zone, 44
Combination radiographic-fluoroscope installations, 26
Commercial building materials, 86
Commercial lead sheets, 87
Common poured concrete, 10
Communication with patient, 27, 32, 33
  Radiographic installations, 27
  Therapy installations, 32, 33
Computation of barrier requirements, 49, 54
  Primary protective barrier, 49
  Secondary protective barrier, 54

Computation of secondary protective barriers, 54, 57
  - Barrier against leakage radiation, 54
  - Barrier against scattered radiation, 57

Computation of thickness of primary protective barrier, 49
Concrete, 8, 10
Concrete equivalence, 44
Concrete solid blocks, 10
  - Joints, 10
  - Mortar, 10

Conduits, 14, 19, 20
Constant potential, 44
Contact therapy, 33
Control stations, 26, 27, 33, 34, 35
  - Radiographic installations, 26
  - Therapy installations, 33, 34, 35

Controlled area, 6, 44
Counter weight used as beam interceptor, 36
Curie, 44
"Cut-off" buttons, 35
Cystoscopic installations, 29

Definitions, 44
Densities of commercial building materials, 86
Designing new facilities, 1
Determination of the adequacy of the shielding, 13
Diagnostic installations, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30
  - Conventional building construction, 24
  - Cystoscopic installations, 29
  - Fluoroscopic installations, 26
  - Location, 24
  - Operating room, 29
  - Photofluorographic (Photo-Roentgen) installations, 28
  - Radiographic installations, 26
  - Room lighting, 25
  - "Special procedure" installations, 29
  - Structural shielding required, 24
  - Unprocessed film storage, 25
  - Use of typical workload values, 25
  - Workload, 24
  - X-ray tube potentials, 24

Diagnostic-type protective tube housing, 44
Distance between individual and barrier, 4, 42
Distance between the individual or object and the source of radiation, 4
Distances from radiation sources, 50
Distances of interest for radiation shielding calculations, 5
Doors, 15, 21
Door sills, 15
  - Baffles, 15

Dose equivalent, 44
Dose rate, 44
d_{pri}, 5, 44, 50
d_{sca}, 5, 50
d_{sec}, 5, 50
Ducts, 14

Earth, 86
Earth fill, 11
Electron beam equipment, 35
Emergency action procedures, 41
Evaluation of old installations, 2
Exposure, 45, 50
Exposure at unit distance/workload, 50
Exposure from the scatterer, 58
Exposure rate, 45
Exposure rate at one meter, 50

F, 50
"Fail-safe" interlock, 32
Ferrophosphorus aggregate concrete, 86
Field area at scatterer, 50
Film storage, 25
Filter, 45
Filtration, 45
Fluid in windows, 11, 12
  - Glycerin, 11
  - Mineral oil, 11

Fluoroscopic installations, 26
  - Tube potentials, 26
  - Workload, 26

Fluoroscopic x-ray equipment, 25
  - Workload, 25

Gamma-beam therapy, 36
Gamma-beam therapy equipment, 36
Gamma-beam therapy installations (teletherapy), 34
Gamma-ray sources, 34
Geometry used in deriving equation for computing thickness of primary-protective barrier, 51
Glycerin, 11

Gold-198, 84
Granite, 10, 86
"Grenz ray therapy," 33
Gypsum, 11

H, 44
Half life, 45
Half-value layer, 45, 50, 88
Height of primary protective barrier, 16
High density concrete, 10
High density lead glass, 12
"High radiation area" signs, 41
Hollow blocks, 11
HVL, 45, 50, 88

I, 50
Ilmenite aggregate concrete, 86
Induced radioactivity, 55
Information to be supplied to the qualified expert, 108
Inspection during construction, 13, 71
Installation, 45
Installation with control panel located within the radiographic room, 28
Interlock, 25, 32, 39, 38, 40, 45
  Radiographic installations, 26
  Therapy installations, 20, 34, 35
Inverse square relationship, 4
Iridium-192, 89
Isocentric equipment, 36

Joints, 13
Joints between different kinds of protective materials, 14

Kilovolt, 45
Kilovolt constant potential, 45
Kilovolt peak, 45
kV, 45
K_{ux}, 50, 51

L, 50
L-blocks, 39
Lead, 9, 86
Lead equivalence, 45
Lead equivalence of the concrete, 21
Lead equivalence of the door, 22
Lead glass, 12, 86
Lead glass observation window, 22, 23
Lead-lined blocks, 9
  Joints, 9
Lead-lined lath, 9
Lead-lined wallboard, 9
Lead sheets, 87
Lead shielding of service box and conduits, 19, 20
Leakage barrier thickness, 55, 56
Leakage of source housing, 50
Leakage radiation, 35, 45, 46
Limestone, 86
Liquids in observation windows, 11, 12
  Glycerin, 11
  Mineral oil, 11
  Water, 12
  Zinc bromide, 12
Loaded concrete, 10
Location of diagnostic installations, 24
Location of therapy installations, 31

Marble, 11, 86
Masonry materials, 10
Maximum average weekly dose values, 23
Maximum permissible dose equivalent, 1, 45, 63
Maze, 21, 22, 31
mCi, 45
MeV, 45
Million electron volts, 45
Millicurie, 45
Milliroentgen, 45
Mineral-base building materials, 10
Mineral oil, 11
Mobile equipment, 26
Mortar, 14
Mortar for protective barriers of block construction, 16
Motor-driven doors, 21, 32
MPD, 1, 45, 63
mR, 45
Multiple sources contributing to exposure, 7
Multiple work shifts, 35

Nail holes in lead shielding, 9
Neuroradiology, 29
Noncontrolled area, 45
Normalized output, 45, 50

Objective of radiation protection, 4
Observation of patient, 27, 32, 33
  Radiographic installations, 27
  Television, 33
  Therapy installations, 32

Observation windows, 11, 12, 20, 23, 27
Occupancy factors, 45, 50, 65
Occupancy factor, T, 5
  Occupationally exposed persons, 6
  Public, 6
Occupational exposure, 45
Occupiable area, 45
Old installations, 2
"ON" time, 4
Openings in protective barriers, 14
Operating room, 29
Operator's control station, 26, 32, 33, 34
  Radiographic installations, 26
  Therapy installations, 32, 33, 34
"Orthovoltage therapy," 34
Owner, 46
Ozone production, 35

P, 6, 50
"Panic" buttons, 35
Phantom, 46
Photofluorographic (Photo-roentgen) installations, 28, 29
  Size of primary protective barrier, 29
Physical factors used in determining barrier requirements, 4, 5
Pipes, 14
Planning new facilities, 7
Plaster, 11
Plate glass, 11
Primary beam, 46
Primary protective barrier, 46, 49
Protection against radiation from brachytherapy sources, 38
Protective barrier, 46
Protective barrier transmission factor, B, 39
Protective screen, 33
Protective source housing, 46
Protective type source housing, 35
Provision for future needs of therapy installations, 31

Qualified expert, 46
Quantities used in calculations of barrier thickness, 50

Rad, 46
Radiation, 46
"Radiation Area" signs, 41
Radiation obliquely incident on a barrier, 53
Radiation protection supervisor, 47
Radiation protection survey, 40, 41, 42, 43, 47
  Emergency action procedures, 41
  Evaluation, 43
  Inspection during construction, 41
  Interlocks, 40
  Radiation scanning and measurement, 42
  Report, 43
  Restriction of the useful beam, 40
  Warning lights, 41
  Warning signs, 41
Radiation survey, 2
Radiation scanning and measurement, 42, 43
  Beam orientations and field sizes, 42
  Instruments, 42
  Use of phantom, 42
  Use of substitute sources, 43
Radiographic-fluoroscopic installations, 26
Radiographic installations, 26
  Communication with patient, 27
  Mobile equipment, 26
  Observation of patients, 27
  Operator's control station, 26
  Tube potentials, 26
  Use factor, 26
  Workload, 26
Radiographic x-ray equipment, 25
Radium-226, 89
Ratio of scattered to incident exposure, 59
References, 104
Relation between distance and millicurie-hours for an exposure of 0.1 R from an unshielded source, 90
Relation between the path length, *S*/cos θ, of radiation incident on a barrier with an angle of obliquity, θ, and the thickness of the barrier *S*, 53
Relation between the transmission, B, and the number of half value layers or tenth value layers, 57
Report of radiation protection survey, 43
Rem, 47
Restriction of the useful beam, 34, 35, 40
Rem, 47
Roentgen, 47
Room lighting, 25, 33
  Fluoroscopic rooms, 25
  Radiographic rooms utilizing a beam defining light, 25
  Therapy installations, 33

Sand, 86
Sand fill, 11
Sand plaster, 86
Scatter exposure rate at one meter, 58
Scattered radiation, 47
Secondary protective barrier, 48, 54
Secondary protective barrier requirements for fluoroscopy installations, 68
Selecting shielding materials, 8
Service boxes, 13, 19, 20
Shall, 3, 47
Sheet lead, 9, 13, 87
  Joints, 9, 13
  Nail holes, 9
  Sagging, 9
Shielded transport containers, 38
  Brachytherapy sources, 38
Shielding design, 13
  Service boxes, 13
Shielding details, 13, 14, 20, 21, 23
  Access to radiation room, 20
  Conduits, 13
  Doors, 13
  Joints, 13
  Observation windows, 13, 23
  Openings, 13
  Service boxes, 13
  Voids in protective barriers, 14
Shielding installations, 13
Shielding joints, 13
Shielding material for a baffle, 17
Shielding materials, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12
  Barium plaster, 11
  Choice of material, 8
  Concrete, 8, 10
  Earth fill, 11
  Glass, 11
  High density lead glass, 12
  Lead, 8, 9
  Lead glass, 12
  Liquids, 12
  Masonry materials, 10
  Mineral-base materials, 10
  Plaster, 11
  Plate glass, 11
  Sand fill, 11
  Steel, 8, 11
  Transparent materials, 11
  Wood products, 11
Shielding of service box and conduit, 19, 20
Shielding requirements for radiographic film, 67
Shielding requirements for radiographic installations, 66
Shielding requirements for 50 kV therapy installations, 69
Shielding requirements for 100 kV therapy installations, 70
Shielding requirements for 150 kV therapy installations, 71
Shielding requirements for 200 kV therapy installations, 72
Shielding requirements for 250 kV therapy installations, 73
Shielding requirements for 300 kV therapy installations, 74
Shielding requirements for 1 MV therapy installations, 75
Shielding requirements for 2 MV therapy installations, 76
Shielding requirements for 3 MV therapy installations, 77
Shielding requirements for 4 MV therapy installations for controlled areas, 78
Shielding requirements for 6 MV therapy installations, 79
Shielding requirements for 8 MV therapy installations, 3, 80
Shielding requirements for 10 MV therapy installations, 81
Should, 3, 46
Shutter, 47
Siliceous concrete, 86
Size of treatment room, 32
S_L, 56
Solid block (or brick) construction, 11, 13
  Joints, 14
  Mortar, 14
Source, 47
Source housing, 47
Source-surface distance, 47
S_p, 50
"Special procedure" installations, 29
S_s, 50
SSD, 47
Stray radiation, 47
Steel, 8, 11, 86
Storage, brachytherapy sources, 38
Storage room, 38
Storage safes, 38
"Superficial therapy", 33
Surgical Suites, 29
Survey, 40, 47

T, 6, 45, 50, 65
t, 50
Teletherapy, 47
Tenth-value layer, 47, 50, 82
Therapeutic-type protective tube housing, 47
Teletherapy equipment, 36
  Isocentric equipment, 36
Therapy installations, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37
  Access to treatment room, 32
  Beam interceptor, 36
  Communication with patient, 32
  "Contact", 32
  Control station, 33, 34, 35
  Counter weight used as beam interceptor, 36
  "Cutoff" buttons, 35
  Doorways, 32
  Elevators, 32
  Gamma beam, 37
  "Grenz-ray", 32
  Induced radioactivity, 35
  Interlocks, 32, 33, 34
  Leakage radiation, 35
  Location, 31
  Mazes, 32
  Megavoltage, 34
  Observation of the patient, 32
  Operator's control station, 32, 35
  "Orthovoltage," 32
  Ozone production, 35
  "Panic" buttons, 35
  Protective type source housing, 34
  Provisions for future needs, 31
  Restriction of useful beam, 34, 37
  Shielding requirements, 31
  Size of treatment room, 32
  "Superficial," 33
  Supervoltage, 34
  Teletherapy, 36
  Warning lights, 35
  Warning signals, 32
  X-ray installations of less than 500 kV, 33
  X-ray installations of one-half to ten million volts (megavoltage or supervoltage), 34
Theta, 53
Tile, 86
Time of exposure, 4
Tomography, 29
Transmission factor, 50
Transmission factor, brachytherapy sources, 38, 39
Transmission factors for leakage radiation, 54
Transmission factor for scattered radiation, 58, 60
Transmission factor for the useful gamma-ray beam, 52
Transmission factor for the useful x-ray beam, 52
Transmission through concrete of cesium-137 scattered radiation, 107
Transmission through concrete of cobalt-60 scattered radiation, 105
Transmission through concrete of gamma rays from selected radionuclides, 102
Transmission through concrete of 6 MV scattered radiation, 100
Transmission through concrete of x-rays produced at 4 to 10 MV, 47
Transmission through iron of gamma rays from selected radionuclides, 103
Transmission through iron of 4 to 10 MV x-rays, 48
Transmission through lead of cobalt-60 scattered radiation, 104
Transmission through lead of cesium-137 scattered radiation, 106
Transmission through lead of gamma rays from selected radionuclides, 101
Transmission through lead and steel of 6 MV scattered radiation, 99
Transmission through lead of x-rays produced by potentials of 4 to 10 MV, 96
Transmission of the scattered radiation through a barrier, 58
Transparent materials, 11
Transport containers, brachytherapy sources, 38
Tube current, 50
TVL, 47, 50, 86
Typical baffle designs, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19
Typical joints between different kinds of protective material, 13
Typical lead baffles under doors, 15
Typical maze design, 21, 22
Typical workloads for busy installations, 64

U, 6, 45, 48, 50, 64

Use factors for primary protective barriers, 64
Use factor, 6, 34, 48, 50
Useful beam, 48
User, 48

Vertical fluoroscopes, 26
Ventilating ducts, 15
Voids in protective barriers, 14

W, 6, 48, 50, 64
Warning lights, 35
Warning signs, 41
Warning signal lights, 41
Warning signals, 32
Weekly design exposure rate, 50
Weekly exposure, 49
Weekly exposure limits, P, 6
Weekly leakage exposure, 54
Windows, 22, 23
Window fluids, 11
  Glycerin, 11
  Mineral oil, 11
Wood products, 11
Workload, 6, 24, 35, 48, 49, 64
  Diagnostic installations, 24
  Therapy installations, 35
Workroom, 38
  Brachytherapy sources, 38

X_L, 54
$\dot{X}_L$, 50, 54
$\dot{X}_n$, 45, 50, 51
X_s, 50, 57
$\dot{X}_s$, 58
$\dot{X}_u$, 49, 50
X-ray installations of less than 500 kV, 33
  Therapy installations, 33
X-ray installations of one-half to ten million volts (megavoltage or supervoltage), 34

NCRP REPORT NO. 48

RADIATION PROTECTION FOR MEDICAL AND ALLIED HEALTH PERSONNEL

Recommendations of the
NATIONAL COUNCIL ON RADIATION
PROTECTION AND MEASUREMENTS

Issued August 1, 1976
First Reprinting November 1, 1977

National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements
7910 WOODMONT AVENUE / WASHINGTON, D.C. 20014

Copyright © National Council on Radiation
Protection and Measurements 1976

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, including photocopying, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotation in critical articles or reviews.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 76-19728
International Standard Book Number 0-913392-30-8

Preface

In hospital radiation facilities of all types, safety procedures for protecting radiation workers and the general public must be carefully planned and supervised and controlled by a qualified staff member. To meet currently accepted standards for protection, the potential exposures of workers and anyone else in or near a radiation area are evaluated and precautions taken to avert the possibility of exceeding, or even approaching, the permissible radiation levels. Radiation workers employed in these facilities are informed about these safety procedures.

However, there are various individuals involved in the delivery of medical care, or in research, who are not usually categorized as radiation workers. Their duties may occasionally take them into areas where radiation or radioactive materials are present. For want of a better term, we may group many of these individuals under the title of "allied health personnel". Among these are physicians, nurses, technicians, and others who are not classified as radiation workers, but who occasionally have to deal with radioactive materials or with patients who have received radiopharmaceuticals.

In addition, there are others, not directly involved in the care of patients or research, who may incidentally be exposed to radiation in the course of their work. Such, for instance, are personnel in institutional shipping and receiving rooms; and those engaged in hospital maintenance work.

Many of these people are concerned about radiation hazards and often suffer misconceptions regarding the subject. They sometimes work without instruction or guidance. Sometimes they seek out someone to ask questions about radiation and do receive from them careful answers to their questions. Too often, however, they are simply told that everything is all right and that they have no cause to worry. One purpose of this report is to note the types of problems encountered, and try to give approaches to handling them. The Radiation Protection Supervisor is usually aware of potential hazards within an institution, but sometimes the problems are not evident even to him. This report should be read by all supervisory personnel in areas where radiation may be encountered, to alert them to possible problems. They can then, if desirable, refer the workers to specific sections of the report. It is not suggested that all allied health personnel should read the entire report, but that those dealing with radiation should read at least part of it. With these various readers in mind, the text has been kept simple, technical terms have been avoided when possible, and both general and specific situations have been discussed.

The present report was prepared by the Council's Scientific Committee 49 on Radiation Protection Guidance for Paramedical Personnel. Serving on the Committee during the preparation of this report were:

EDITH H. QUIMBY, *Chairman*
GERALD SHAPIRO
ELMER E. STICKLEY

The Council wishes to express its appreciation to the members of the Committee for the time and effort devoted to the preparation of this report.

LAURISTON S. TAYLOR
President, NCRP

Bethesda, Maryland
January 1, 1976

Contents

Preface iii

1. **General Considerations** 1
   - 1.1 Introduction 1
   - 1.2 Purpose of Report 1
   - 1.3 Topics to be Considered 2
2. **Biological Considerations** 4
   - 2.1 Biological Results of Exposure to Ionizing Radiation 4
   - 2.2 Maximum Permissible Doses and Dose Limits 5
   - 2.3 Responsibilities of the Radiation Protection Supervisor 7
3. **The X-Ray Department** 9
   - 3.1 General Information 9
   - 3.2 Diagnostic Radiology 10
   - 3.3 Therapeutic Radiology, Including Supervoltage and Gamma-Ray Teletherapy 13
4. **Radioactive Nuclides (Radioactive Isotopes)** 15
   - 4.1 General Considerations 15
   - 4.2 Radioactive Material Receiving and Disbursing Areas 17
   - 4.3 Diagnostic Procedures 20
   - 4.4 Therapeutic Procedures 21
   - 4.5 The Attendant's Attitude Toward the Patient 27
   - 4.6 Procedure After Death of a Patient Containing an Appreciable Amount of Radioactive Material 27
5. **Laboratories** 29
   - 5.1 Physics, Chemistry, and Physiology 29
   - 5.2 Animal Laboratories 30
6. **The Morgue** 31
7. **Disposal of Radioactive Waste** 33
   - 7.1 General 33
   - 7.2 Gaseous Waste 34
   - 7.3 Liquid Waste 34
   - 7.4 Solid Wastes 35

APPENDIX A **Maximum Permissible Doses and Dose Limits** 36

APPENDIX B **Radiation Detecting Devices** 37

APPENDIX C **Exposure Rates From Secondary Radiation to Persons Manually Restraining Patients During Radiographic Procedures** 38

APPENDIX D **Physical Data for Some Commonly Used Radionuclides** 39

APPENDIX E **Caution Signs, Warnings, and Labels** 41

APPENDIX F **Approximate Exposure Rates Around the Bed of a Patient Containing 100 mg of Radium** 49

APPENDIX G **Emergency Procedures** 51

APPENDIX H **U.S. Regional Coordinating Offices for Radiological Assistance** 54

APPENDIX I **Glossary** 56

The NCRP 60

NCRP Reports 65

Index 69

1. General Considerations

1.1 Introduction

With the ever-increasing use of x rays and radioactive materials, more and more persons may be exposed to ionizing radiations in the course of their work. The professional status of these individuals ranges from the highly-trained radiation specialist to the casual interdepartmental messenger. Many of these people have very little information about the possible biological effects of radiation or about the amounts which may be significant. Their attitudes toward possible exposure vary from indifference to almost pathological fear. Frequently they have questions about radiation and radiation protection practices but are reluctant or unable to seek out those who could provide answers. Their concern and interest, however, should not be ignored. This report seeks to meet their needs.

1.2 Purpose of Report

This report is designed to be placed in the hands of employees anywhere in the hospital or research laboratory where radiation may be used. Administrators and supervisory personnel should find it helpful in alerting them to areas where possible hazards may exist. It conveys information about radiation protection for:

X-ray technologists and technicians
Nuclear medicine technologists and technicians
Nurses, aides, orderlies
Laboratory technicians
Shipping and receiving room personnel
Messengers and guards concerned with transport of radioactive materials
Secretaries and clerks in or near radiation areas
Porters, janitors, maintenance men.

It is suggested that copies of this report be placed in such locations as to be readily available to anyone desiring this type of information.

1.3 Topics to be Considered

The radiation sources, uses, and facilities to be considered include the following:

- *Radiation Areas*
  - *X-Ray Diagnosis*
    - General Radiography
    - Mobile (portable) Equipment
    - Operating Room Procedures
    - Special Radiographic Procedures
    - Animal Radiography
  - *Radiation Therapy*
    - X Rays, Cobalt Teletherapy and Particle Accelerators
    - Brachytherapy
      - Sealed source storage area
      - Patient and administration areas
      - Source transport
      - Post-administration care
  - *Nuclear Medicine and Radioactive Materials (Radioisotopes)*
    - The High Activity Laboratory
      - Receiving
      - Storage
    - Radiopharmaceutical Procedures
      - Radioimmunoassay
      - Bioassay
      - In vitro testing
    - Hospital Procedures
      - Therapeutic applications
      - Patients' waiting areas
      - Diagnostic tests
    - Research Laboratories
      - Physics, chemistry, radiobiology, radiopharmaceuticals
    - Disposal Facilities for Solids, Liquids, Gases
      - Hospitals
      - Laboratories
    - Morgue

Obviously, these topics cannot be covered in detail, nor should they be in a report of this type. Other reports from the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements have gone into detail on some of the specified topics (see list of NCRP Reports on page 65); the general purpose here is to point out where special precautions should be observed, and to prevent undue worry about situations with little risk.

One point of terminology should be emphasized. In the various reports of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, the terms "shall" and "should" are used with strictly defined meanings: *Shall* indicates a recommendation that is necessary or essential to meet the currently accepted standards of protection. *Should* indicates an advisory recommendation that is to be applied when practicable. It is equivalent to "is recommended" or "is advisable". When these words occur in the text in such a manner as to refer to recommendations, they are italicized.

The reader is referred to the Glossary (Appendix I) for definitions of the terms used in the report.

2. Biological Considerations

2.1 Biological Results of Exposure to Ionizing Radiation

Exposure to ionizing radiations may result in two kinds of effects in living organisms, somatic and genetic.

2.1.1 *Somatic Effects*

Effects which may become evident in the irradiated individual are called *somatic*. Detectable effects are not to be expected in individuals exposed in the course of their work in a hospital or research laboratory unless there is a gross radiation accident. Permissible levels of radiation exposure have been established (see Section 2.2.3) and for doses below these, or even considerably higher, there is no practical risk of radiation injury. Fear is sometimes expressed that exposure to radiation will decrease libido, and even produce sterility. For exposures within the permissible limits, or even considerably higher, there is no cause for such fears.

2.1.2 *Genetic Effects*

Effects which become evident in the descendents of the individual exposed are called *genetic*. Such effects result from alterations in the reproductive cells, which can lead to defects in the offspring. Such changes are called *genetic mutations*. Genetic effects seldom manifest themselves as grossly deformed children. Early destruction of the fertilized ovum, or miscarriage is more likely, or the child may have latent or obvious metabolic or biologic changes that render him less healthy than normal.

Detectable radiation-induced genetic mutations can result if the individual's reproductive cells have been exposed to an appreciable amount of radiation. Such changes do not produce any observable effect on the exposed individual, but may appear in subsequent generations. They may not be manifest in the children of the exposed individual, but may lie dormant for several generations and may eventually be eliminated completely from the genetic pool. If the recommendations of this report are followed, it would not be expected that any worker would receive enough radiation to transmit appreciable genetic effects.

Radiation is not the only agent that can cause genetic mutations. Certain chemicals, high body temperatures, and other agents can also produce them. Therefore, when a child shows a genetic defect it should not be assumed that it was directly due to the irradiation of a parent. In fact, about two to four percent of all babies born in the United States exhibit some such abnormalities, even when neither parent has had any radiation exposure except that from natural background to which mankind has always been exposed (see Section 2.2.1).

2.2 Maximum Permissible Doses and Dose Limits

2.2.1 It is not possible to prevent a person from receiving any radiation exposure. There is a natural background to which everyone is exposed. This consists of cosmic rays, radiations from rocks, soils, and building materials, and even from radioactive substances, such as potassium and radioactive carbon, which are found in the human body. The background radiation varies from place to place; it is never very high, but it is measurable and cannot be considered entirely negligible.

2.2.2 The unit of dose for all types of ionizing radiation used in medicine is the *rad*. This is defined as the absorption of 0.01 joule per kilogram of material. (Formerly official, and still frequently used, is the definition of one rad as the absorption of 100 ergs per gram.) One rad equals 1000 millirads. (The dose to the lungs in a chest x ray is about 10 millirads. The range of background dose accumulated per year in the United States varies from 80 to 250 millirads.) Another dose unit has been devised only for protection specifications, to take account of the fact that some types of radiation are biologically more effective than others. This is called the "rem", and is the unit applied to the dose in rads multiplied by a factor expressing the biological effectiveness. For x rays and beta and gamma rays from radioactive substances (the ones chiefly used in medical applications), this factor is one, so that for these radiations, the number of rems equals the number of rads. Another unit which may well be introduced here is the roentgen. This is not a unit of dose, but of exposure, that is, the amount of radiation reaching a specified point; it applies only to x and gamma rays. The output of x-ray and teletherapy gamma-ray machines is calibrated in roentgens. The receipt of one roentgen of exposure will result in an absorbed dose of approximately one rad. The purpose of introducing the rem and the roentgen at this point is to make the reader aware of them, for they will be encountered in radiation safety specifications.

2.2.3 For radiation protection purposes, people are divided into two classes. First are those classified as radiation workers who incur a certain likelihood of exposure to ionizing radiation in the course of their normal duties as an occupational risk. The risk incurred is slight and is to be accepted in the same way as are risks by workers in other fields such as electricians, chemists, biologists and sanitary engineers. These workers *should* receive instruction or training regarding radiation procedures. The radiation limits pertinent to the protection of such individuals are called maximum permissible doses. A list of maximum permissible doses for the total body and for certain organs is given in Appendix A. The maximum permissible dose for a radiation worker is 5 rem in any one year. Irradiation at the level of the maximum permissible doses is not to be considered as desirable. In every case, the dose *should* be kept as low as practicable.

2.2.4 The radiation level pertinent to the protection of individuals not classified as radiation workers (the general public) is called a dose limit. The limit for members of the general public is one-tenth of the total body limit for radiation workers, that is, 0.5 rem per year. Those not specifically classified as radiation workers are considered members of the general public.

2.2.5 *Radiation in Early Pregnancy*

One problem which arises frequently is that of the possibility of radiation exposure during the early weeks of pregnancy, even before the woman may be aware of her condition. Here the problem is the dose to the fetus. In the early stages of development, certain tissues or organs are especially sensitive to radiation. The present recommendation is that the total permissible dose to a woman for the entire gestation period *shall* be 0.5 rem. All women of child-bearing age *should be* considered as potentially pregnant with regard to their radiation exposure. Their assigned duties should reflect this consideration. For the female radiation worker, wearing a monitor (see Section 2.3.1), it will be possible to determine her exposure and so regulate her duties to limit radiation to the fetus. For women who are not radiation workers, the permissible level of 0.5 rem per year will suffice to keep her within acceptable levels during pregnancy.

2.3 Responsibilities of the Radiation Protection Supervisor

2.3.1 In any hospital, medical laboratory or other situation where individuals may be occupationally exposed to ionizing radiation, the services of a Radiation Protection Supervisor (RPS) are required. In the larger institution, an individual is usually designated officially to the position and serves on a full-time basis. In the smaller hospital or laboratory, the Radiation Protection Supervisor may be employed in that capacity on a part-time basis, but the person so designated *should* be available or on call for emergencies. The duties of the RPS include evaluation of radiation areas and procedures so as to insure that all radiation work is performed without undue exposure to anyone. It is his responsibility to check the various facilities, to make sure that protective barriers are adequate and have structural integrity. On the basis of the type and amount of work performed, and the working environment, he advises as to which areas are to be designated as controlled and which persons are to be categorized as radiation workers (occupationally exposed individuals). Anyone for whom there is a possibility of exposure of more than one-fourth of the maximum permissible dose for radiation workers, should expect to be classified as a radiation worker. (See NCRP Report No. 39, *Basic Radiation Protection Criteria*, pages 64–73.)

The Radiation Protection Supervisor is responsible for maintaining the radiation exposure history of every individual classified as a radiation worker, and making such records available to the worker on request. The worker's exposure is measured by personnel dosimeters. Usually these are film badges which can be carried in a pocket or pinned to one's clothes. Such monitors are issued to all individuals who have a reasonable possibility of receiving a dose exceeding one-fourth of the maximum permissible amount. These monitors are worn for a specified time, after which they are processed to indicate the radiation exposure during the period worn. In a properly supervised department, the exposure will seldom be more than a few millirads. If it is higher, the RPS may suspect that something is wrong, and he *should* check equipment and procedures to find the cause. (See Appendix B for information on radiation monitors and survey instruments.)

2.3.2 The Radiation Protection Supervisor *shall* be available for consultation on all aspects of radiation safety; anyone can go to him with questions. He or a designated alternate *shall* be available to handle emergencies at all hours of the day or night. Suitable telephone numbers *shall* be posted in all radiation areas and listed with telephone operators, so that the RPS can be contacted at any time.

2.3.3 Sometimes uninformed workers are found to believe that the personnel monitor in some way protects the wearer. Badges and ionization chambers have sometimes been asked for on that basis. This idea, of course, is erroneous. The monitor only measures the amount of radiation to which it is exposed.

2.3.4 It is the responsibility of the Radiation Protection Supervisor to make sure that the dose limits applicable to the general public and to individuals who may be exposed occasionally are not exceeded. This is usually done by ensuring that there are no significant radiation levels (not more than 2.0 mR in one hour) in areas occupied by individuals who are not radiation workers. The RPS will note and take appropriate action regarding occasional entry into a radiation area by an outsider, or of temporary assignment of personnel to radiation duties. For example, a nurse may be assigned to partial care of a patient who is receiving brachytherapy; or a secretary's desk may be improperly relocated in an area where only limited occupancy is permitted. Individuals may have questions about possible risks involved in the new situation, and yet hesitate to consult the RPS. The purpose of this report is to provide answers to many of the questions which such individuals have, and to encourage them not to hesitate to consult with the Radiation Protection Supervisor for additional information.

3. The X-Ray Department—Diagnosis, Therapy, Experimental Laboratories

3.1 General Information

The greatest use of x rays is in diagnostic procedures. Before x-ray equipment is put into regular use, complete radiation safety surveys *shall* be carried out, to ensure that the walls and barriers offer sufficient protection and that the equipment complies with applicable safety regulations. The radiation checks must include all positions of regular occupancy, such as technologists' stations, secretaries' desks and files, and all places of partial occupancy such as waiting rooms, dressing rooms, etc. Corridors and storage rooms must also be checked, and if necessary, established as locations permitting only limited occupancy. The survey *shall* also include the evaluation of radiation levels on the floors above and below, and of areas in adjacent structures, such as rooms across courtyards from x-ray rooms. If at any time there are structural changes or relocation of equipment, a new survey *shall* be performed.

3.1.1 Certain regulations as to classification and monitoring of workers have been established. If a person normally working in a controlled area, or in performing his normal duties, may receive a dose exceeding one-fourth of the maximum permissible dose for radiation workers, he *shall* be classified as a radiation worker (occupationally exposed individual). As a radiation worker, he *should* wear a personnel monitor. X-ray technologists and others working in and around x-ray rooms are likely to be readily identified as individuals who might be classified as radiation workers by the Radiation Protection Supervisor, but cognizance should be taken of other individuals who enter these areas from time to time – nursing aides or orderlies bringing patients, other messengers and cleaning personnel.

3.1.2 The Radiation Protection Supervisor may designate certain areas, such as the radionuclide storage area, as radiation areas with limited occupancy. Such areas *shall not* be used by personnel without specific permission.

3.2 Diagnostic Radiology

3.2.1 *General Radiography*

Only persons required for the radiographic examination *should* be in the x-ray room during an exposure, and, in general, no one but the patient *should* be in any unshielded area when x rays are being generated. The technologist *shall* be inside a shielded booth or behind an adequate protective screen. Radiography with low kilovoltage radiation, as in mammography, requires similar precautions.

Occasions may arise when the patient must be restrained during the exposure. Such patients may be small children, uncooperative older children, or incapacitated adults. Tape is often used to help position patients and many commercial immobilizers are available, but these are sometimes not adequate and it may be necessary for someone to hold or restrain the patient. No person *shall* be employed specifically to hold patients, nor *should* members of the Radiology Department who are classified as radiation workers be asked to do so. If the patient must be held during the x-ray exposure, aides, orderlies, nurses, or members of the patient's family *should* be enlisted for this duty. Such persons *shall* be provided with protective apron and gloves, and be positioned so that the unattenuated useful beam does not strike any part of the body. A few assignments of this kind need cause no concern; efforts *should* be made to limit the number of times any one person is called upon to do such work. If an individual is called upon to hold patients relatively often, he *should* consult with the Radiation Protection Supervisor and obtain information on radiation hazards, safety procedures, and personnel monitoring.

The radiation shielding properties of protective aprons and gloves may be impaired by improper handling or storage. They *should not* be folded sharply, but *should* be hung on holders designed for this purpose.

A protective apron reduces exposures to the gonads and the blood forming organs to such an extent that the exposure to the head becomes of primary interest. It is therefore recommended that in the case where a patient must be held, personnel monitors *should* be worn outside the apron at the collar. Measurements with a phantom have shown that with large fields and relatively high kilovoltages, the eyes may receive unexpectedly large doses; some pertinent data are given in Appendix C. If it appears that the exposure to the head may approach one quarter of permissible levels, radiation monitors *shall* be provided.

3.2.2 *The Mobile, or Portable X-Ray Machine*

Mobile x-ray machines offer more opportunity for inadvertent exposure than is the case for fixed machines in the department. The operator *shall* wear a protective apron, and *shall* check that no one except the patient is in the direct or useful beam. The exposure switch *should* be so located that the operator is at least six feet from the patient. Anyone assisting *shall* also wear a protective apron and stand as far as possible from the patient. However in the close confines of the hospital room or ward, or in the operating room or the intensive care unit, it is sometimes difficult for everyone to be several feet from the patient. Often a nurse or an orderly must hold uncooperative, unconscious, or mentally agitated patients or those otherwise incapacitated, and assist others in maintaining difficult or uncomfortable positions. In such situations, the assistant will be required to be in contact with the patient. He *shall* be provided with protective apron and gloves. In all cases, the direct beam *should* be avoided. Other persons who must be near the patient, *should* be provided with protective clothing (leaded apron and gloves) or be located behind a protective screen. In such circumstances, the main exposure to personnel will be radiation scattered in all directions by the patient's body.

3.2.3 *Cystoscopic Radiography*

Cystoscopic radiography offers problems similar to those found in portable radiography. The cystoscopist and probably others will be near the patient while the x-ray beam is on. Such persons *should* wear protective clothing. It needs to be remembered that scattered radiation from the patient may be appreciable, and everyone *should* withdraw as far as possible or stand behind a protective screen.

3.2.4 *Radiography and Fluoroscopy in the Operating Room*

These procedures may present unavoidable difficulties. A wide variety of beam directions may be required. People cannot leave the vicinity of the patient. The main precaution *should* be to make sure that no one is in line with the direct or useful beam. All persons *should* try to be at least 6 feet away from the point where the beam enters the patient, and well away from the useful beam. Those who must remain close *should* wear protective aprons or stand behind protective shields. There is often no structural shielding in the operating room, so that persons in adjacent areas *should* be considered. When there is doubt, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* be asked for advice. (While masonry walls usually give adequate protection, many new construction materials provide insignificant shielding.)

3.2.5 *Fluoroscopy and Angiography*

Undoubtedly the greatest exposure to personnel involved in diagnostic radiology occurs during fluoroscopy, angiography, and other special studies. In such procedures, some persons must remain in the x-ray room and close to the patient during radiation exposures. Examinations often entail fluoroscopy for extended periods and multiple radiographic exposures at high voltages. Requirements for surgical sterility are often incompatible with proper shielding. The complexity of the examination often requires the presence of a considerable number of people. For a single study one may find that a radiologist, an x-ray technologist, laboratory technicians, nurses and aides are in the room. All persons involved need to be aware of the basic principles of radiation protection. Protective devices normally supplied with the equipment, such as lead drapes, protective pull-up panels, Bucky slot covers, etc., *should* be used whenever possible. When a number of patients are to be examined with the same physical set-up, it may be wise to devise special shielding devices. Persons who are not required to attend the patient during the x-ray exposure *should* stand back as far as possible or behind a protective shield. Everyone in the room *should* be supplied with protective clothing and personnel monitors. It should be noted that with image intensified fluoroscopy the reduction in scattered radiation, in comparison to non-intensified fluoroscopy, may not be very significant, and therefore one should not be lulled into a false sense of security and neglect those precautions which apply to any fluoroscopic examinations.

3.2.6 *Dental Radiography*

The same problems are encountered in dental radiography as in general radiography (see Section 3.2.1). NCRP Report No. 35, *Dental X-Ray Protection*, gives detailed information regarding this subject.

3.2.7 *Radiography of Animals*

Some animal x-ray installations are managed as meticulously as those in the clinical department. But in other cases, particularly those situations in which radiation is not often used, circumstances may arise where it is easy for bad habits to develop. Even though the x-ray tube may be properly shielded, and be in its own enclosure, radiation hazards can still exist, due to scatter from the animal or to the leakage of radiation through the tube housing. The technicians operating the machine may not be as strict or knowledgeable about safety procedures as those in the clinical x-ray department. The door may carelessly be left open – in fact there may not be a door. Occasionally persons unwisely remain in the room during the exposures. While animals undergoing irradiation can always be immobilized, the effort to do so may not seem worthwhile for just a short exposure so someone may be pressed into service to hold the animal. This duty is likely to be given to an uninformed technician, who may not know that one should wear protective garments and keep out of the direct beam.

Those who engage in radiography of animals are urged to request the Radiation Protection Supervisor to devote particular attention to the animal x-ray set-up. Structural shielding *should* be checked and specific rules regarding safety observed. Periodic reviews of procedures are desirable to see that safety precautions are followed. The fact that low kilovoltages are used for examining most animals is no excuse for an inadequate safety program. (See also NCRP Report No. 36, *Radiation Protection in Veterinary Medicine*.)

3.2.8 *Access to X-Ray Equipment*

All x-ray machines *should* be secured against unauthorized use. Since the radiation output of these tubes is high, a damaging dose can be inflicted in a few minutes. Unauthorized persons *shall not* operate x-ray machines.

3.3 Therapeutic Radiology, Including Supervoltage and Gamma-Ray Teletherapy

3.3.1 *Patient Treatments*

With very few exceptions, no one but the patient *should* be in the treatment room while a radiation therapy machine is operating. With equipment such as x-ray machines, linear accelerators and betatrons, there is no radiation present until the exposure switch is activated. Before the equipment is turned on, personnel may enter these areas without fear of radiation, and nurses and aides may readily assist in positioning the patient and applying supporting or restraining devices. They *shall* leave the room before the machine is turned on.

In contrast to x-ray equipment, with teletherapy devices containing radioactive materials as the source of radiation, such as radioactive cobalt (^{60}Co) or radioactive cesium (^{137}Cs), leakage radiation is present close to the machine at all times. The radiation levels present with the machines turned off are low compared to those present when the equipment is turned on, but still may be appreciable. Personnel who work in such installations *shall* be told that such leakage radiation is emitted, and what locations to avoid. For all such equipment, with the beam in the "off" position, the average exposure rate at 1 meter from the source *shall* be less than 2 milliroentgens in one hour.

Fears are sometimes expressed that the patient who has been exposed to external high energy radiations will become radioactive and that, after treatment is completed, he may bring radiation out of the treatment room in his body. Such fears are not justified by the facts. There is no need for such concern.

3.3.2 *Experimental Animal and Biological or Chemical Specimen Irradiation*

In the course of radiobiological and radiochemical investigations, many animals and specimens are irradiated, often to very high doses. Although positioning must be precise and is critical, assistants *shall not* hold creatures or remain within the radiation enclosure during an exposure. If animals or specimens are to be removed at various stages of the irradiation, the machine *shall* always be turned off before their removal. There *shall* never be an effort to remove specimens manually while the beam is on.

The possibility of undesired irradiation will arise if anyone remains close to the specimens or animals being irradiated, without adequate shielding from scattered radiation. If animals must be watched, a shielded observation booth or a screen with a suitable lead glass window *shall* be provided.

4. Radioactive Nuclides (Radioactive Isotopes)

4.1 General Considerations

Radioactive nuclides may be widely used throughout a medical institution, in contrast to the limited areas where x rays are employed. Radioactive nuclides are to be found in many clinical departments, outpatient facilities, operating rooms and research laboratories, as well as in any place where patients are cared for or studied. Radioactive materials may be delivered to the hospital receiving room and transported through corridors and on elevators; they may be checked and processed in a room set aside for that purpose, and then delivered to authorized users.

For an understanding of the safety procedures relating to radioactive nuclides, some understanding of radioactivity is essential. It should be understood that all matter is made up of elements, such as iron, copper, oxygen, etc., singly or in combinations. Each element is made up of *atoms*; all the atoms of one form of one element are alike. Each atom has a nucleus containing most of the material of the atom. Around the nucleus electrons travel in orbits; the number of electrons corresponds to the electric charge on the nucleus. Most elements as we know them are *stable*, the atoms do not change even when they enter into various combinations with other atoms. However, there are *radioactive* forms of all elements; the internal structure of their nuclei is slightly different from those of the stable form. These are called *radioactive isotopes*. Radioactive forms of all elements are called radioactive nuclides or radionuclides.

These radioactive atoms have the property of "*disintegrating*", emitting radiation in the process. The disintegration scheme follows a particular pattern. Half of all the atoms of a given radionuclide will disintegrate during a specific period called the *half-life*. In the second half-life the entire remaining half of the atoms do not disintegrate, but only half of those left, or one-fourth of the original number. In the third half-life, half of the remaining quarter or one-eighth of the original disintegrate, and so on. Thus the activity of any preparation of a radionuclide decreases gradually over a period of time which is dependent on the half-life. If the original amount and the half-life of a given radionuclide are known, the amount present at any subsequent time can be calculated. Each radionuclide has its own specific half-life. Half-lives of different radionuclides vary from a very small fraction of a second to billions of years. Those of medical interest have half-lives ranging from a few minutes to many years.

The radiations emitted in the disintegration of radionuclides are not all alike. There are three types, called alpha (α), beta (β), and gamma (γ). Some radionuclides emit just one of these types, some emit alpha and gamma, and some beta and gamma; sometimes mixtures of radionuclides are used which emit all three, for example, radium with its disintegration products.

Alpha radiation is so easily absorbed that it will not pass through the walls of any usual container; it can be stopped by two or three inches of air. One of the best known alpha emitters is polonium (^{210}Po).

Beta radiation consists of fast-moving electrons, which can pass through thin-walled containers, and can penetrate a few millimeters into living tissues. Typical beta emitters are radioactive phosphorus (^{32}P), radioactive strontium (^{90}Sr), and radioactive hydrogen (tritium, ^{3}H).

Gamma radiation emitted by radionuclides has properties identical to those of x rays. Gamma rays are found with a wide range of energies and of penetrating abilities. Many gamma emitters used in medicine, such as radioactive iodine (^{131}I), also emit beta rays. But some, such as radioactive chromium (^{51}Cr) do not emit beta rays.

The activity of a radioactive nuclide is specified in terms of the number of atoms disintegrating per second. A *curie* (Ci) is 37 billion disintegrations per second; a millicurie (mCi), the thousandth part of a curie, is 37 million disintegrations per second; a microcurie (μCi), the millionth part of a curie, is 37 thousand disintegrations per second. Such large numbers may seem to imply that very large amounts of material are involved, but when it is realized that there are many billions of billions of atoms in a drop of water, it can be seen that the quantity of a radionuclide which has an activity of one curie may be very small. The relationship between weight of the material and activity depends on the half-life and the atomic weight of the radionuclide. In general, the longer the half-life, the greater the weight of a curie of any radionuclide.

The activities of radionuclides used in most diagnostic procedures are in the microcurie and millicurie range, while almost all therapeutic procedures use millicurie amounts. Activities in the curie range are never used for individual dosage in nuclear medicine. Such large activities are used only in special laboratory work or as radiation sources for external treatments with teletherapy apparatus.

A list of radionuclides currently used in diagnostic or therapeutic procedures is set out in Appendix D, with data concerning the half-lives and radiations emitted.

4.2 Radioactive Material Receiving and Disbursing Areas

4.2.1 *Receiving*

Since most of the radionuclides used in medicine have rather short half-lives, there must be regular, systematic delivery procedures. Some materials must be delivered on an almost daily basis, others weekly or less often. Companies involved in the preparation of radioactive drugs have developed elaborate systems to insure prompt delivery. Each institution is expected to establish a set procedure for receipt and handling of such deliveries with minimum hazard to the receiving room staff. Problems can arise if deliveries arrive at odd hours of the night when trained staff members may not be available and when the packages contain the radioactive materials at their highest activities. A routine procedure regarding check-in, temporary storage, and delivery to the radionuclide laboratory *shall* be set up by the Radiation Protection Supervisor, who *shall* evaluate possible hazards at all stages. Packages are labeled with a number called the transport index (T.I.) which indicates the exposure rate in milliroentgens per hour at one meter from the surface of the box at the time of shipment. (See sample label in Appendix E, page 43.) If many packages with high transport index are to be expected, some provision needs to be made for keeping them at a distance from regular workers, or behind a shield, until they can be turned over to the radionuclide laboratory personnel. The total transport index allowable in any one area is 50 (Federal Register Vol. 33, No. 194, pp. 173-414). Every effort *should* be made to deliver the material from the receiving room to the proper laboratory as soon as possible. All persons who may be required to handle such material, or work in an area where the packages may remain on a regular basis, *should* request instruction from the Radiation Protection Supervisor on procedures to follow. If a shipment is received in damaged condition, it *should not* be handled, and the Radiation Protection Supervisor or his deputy *should* be summoned at once.

4.2.2 *The High Activity Laboratory (The "Hot Lab")*

Most radionuclide work in an institution begins in the "hot lab". In larger institutions this will be one or more separate rooms used for preparing material for clinical use, research, or other uses, or an isotope preparation suite. For smaller groups it may be a section of the nuclear medicine room. It is recommended that whenever possible the hot lab functions be performed in a separate location. Shipments of radioactive material are usually delivered to the hot lab unopened. There they are opened, calibrated if necessary, and from there dispensed to various users. Records of receipt, disbursement, and disposal of all radionuclides are required by government and accrediting agencies. All radionuclide operations in this laboratory are usually under the direct supervision of the Radiation Protection Supervisor. All procedures must be carefully planned and monitored. In the event of an accident, such as a spill of a radioactive solution anywhere in the institution, the Radiation Protection Supervisor or members of his staff *shall* be summoned at once (see Appendix G). Emergency instructions posted in the hot lab *shall* be consulted. A list of telephone numbers of individuals to call either during the day or night, posted in convenient locations, *shall* be available.

Material dispensed from the hot lab to various areas of the institution *shall* be in suitable containers that restrict escaping radiation to a low level. These containers *should* carry the appropriate radioactivity label (see Appendix E). Messengers coming to pick up material, *shall not* tamper with the protective container in which it is received. If the container is found to be wet or damaged, the attention of hot lab personnel *should* be called to this fact, and a wipe test for radioactive contamination done immediately. The container for radioactive material may be only a large fiber box, whose function is to ensure that there is sufficient distance from the active material in an inner container.

For transportation of radioactive material between buildings or between institutions, the Department of Transportation has set up regulations regarding dose limits on packages and labeling of transportation vehicles. The requirements are set out in, *A Review of the Department of Transportation Regulations for Transportation of Radioactive Materials,* Dec. 1972. Copies may be obtained from the Department of Transportation, Office of Hazardous Materials, Washington, D.C.

4.2.3 *Janitorial Personnel*

Individuals responsible for janitorial work in radiation areas *should* be instructed by the Radiation Protection Supervisor or his deputy as to what to do and what not to do. Trash or waste baskets which may contain radioactive material *shall not* be emptied into a common laboratory hamper; special disposal procedures directed by the RPS *shall* be followed. If the janitor enters the room alone at any time and finds things out of place, and particularly if there appears to be spilled material on the floor or workbench, he *shall* avoid touching or stepping into such material, and *shall* leave the room at once, closing and locking the door, and *shall* immediately inform someone in authority (the RPS or his deputy). (While technicians *should* always leave everything secure and in good order, accidents have happened when windows were left open and containers upset by drafts.)

4.2.4 *Storage and Decay Area*

Contaminated equipment, unused radionuclides, and waste material may have too much activity to permit immediate disposal and are sometimes kept in a storage or decay room until the activity levels have decreased sufficiently. Contaminated material from ordinary hospital or laboratory procedures, or from accidents, *shall* be checked by the Radiation Protection Supervisor or his deputy, who will determine if the material must be kept for decay, and if so, for how long.

4.2.5 *Storage of Sealed Sources*

Sealed sources present special problems since they usually contain high-energy radionuclides of long half-life. Shielding requirements for a source safe containing several sources include several inches of lead. Care must be taken to avoid damage to the individual containers to ensure that the material does not leak or spill out. The Radiation Protection Supervisor *shall* test for adequacy of containers and conduct safety surveys of the area. Records *shall* be maintained of sources sent out and returned. It is important that storage facilities for these sources be set up in a specially designated area separate from all other functions. (See NCRP Report No. 40, *Protection Against Radiation from Brachytherapy Sources*.)

4.2.6 *Posting of Warning Signs*

The door of any room where an appreciable quantity of radioactive material may be left unattended *shall* be posted with the appropriate radiation warning sign. Specific radiation levels require specific signs to indicate the radiation exposure rate possible in each area. Suitable signs or labels *shall* also be affixed to any bottle or other container of radioactive material (see Appendix E).

4.2.7 *Security*

All areas where radioactive nuclides may be put *shall* be locked when unattended. Emergency instructions and a list of personnel to be contacted in case of fire, theft or accident *shall* be posted.

4.3 Diagnostic Procedures

4.3.1 *Patients' Waiting Areas*

The area where patients wait to receive diagnostic doses of radionuclides *shall* conform to safety requirements for the general public. If some patients must remain for some time after receiving the material, a separate waiting room *shall* be provided for them. Children *should not* be allowed as visitors in this room.

4.3.2 *Diagnostic Procedures*

Diagnostic procedures may be divided roughly into two classes, sample counting and patient measurements.

Sample Counting. In these procedures, at a stated time after administration of the dose, specimens such as blood, urine, feces, expired air, etc., are taken for measurement. They may have to be transported from the patient's location to other areas for processing. In most cases, the amount of radioactivity in such specimens is very low. While there is negligible radiation hazard, care must be taken in handling such materials, to prevent loss, spillage or contamination. The tests usually require a knowledge of the total sample volume, so partial loss of the contents could lead to erroneous results. A spill could result in contamination which would interfere with precise measurements.

Patient Measurements. Many diagnostic procedures in nuclear medicine involve direct measurement of the amount or distribution of a radionuclide tracer within the patient. In such cases, measurements are usually made directly on the patient in a laboratory. Such tests may be called uptakes, scans, imaging procedures or dynamic function studies.

The object in all diagnostic procedures involving radionuclides is to determine something about an organ's shape or function. Therefore, the administered dose must be so small as not to produce any radiation effect, which might result in a change in the status quo of the patient. In general, because of the small activity involved, an individual who has received a tracer or diagnostic dose of any radionuclide presents little hazard.

Questions have arisen in connection with the quite large tracer doses of some very short-lived nuclides being used at present. It is true that the injection of 15 mCi of radioactive technetium (^{99m}Tc) or 50 mCi of radioactive xenon (^{123}Xe) may pose an exposure problem for the person administering the material or doing the study, but he is a radiation worker, taking such precautions as are necessary in his status. A person in the non-occupationally exposed class is not expected to perform such procedures. Due to the short half-lives of these radionuclides, the doses received by patients in adjoining beds are minimal. It should be remembered that in these studies the short half-lives ensure that the exposure from any one patient will be low. It is only for those who may be exposed to many such patients that special precautions may be required. If an appreciable number of these studies, or similar new ones, are performed, the Radiation Protection Supervisor will wish to evaluate problems which could arise in connection with transporting and caring for such patients within the hospital – exposure to persons in elevators, nursing care, exposure to patients in adjoining beds, the handling of excreta or expired air or the discharge of such patients from the hospital.

Nursing care of patients who have received tracer or diagnostic doses generally presents no radiation problems. If urine or fecal material is to be saved for the laboratory, waterproof gloves *should* be used in the collection or placement of the material into proper containers. Gloves *should* also be worn during cleaning of bedpans, urinals, or any other items which might be contaminated.

The urine of patients who have received millicurie doses of technetium for diagnostic procedures will probably contain a significant amount of radioactive material for short periods. Therefore, non-radioactive urine tests *should* be postponed at least a day.

4.4 Therapeutic Procedures

4.4.1 *Classes of Procedures*

Therapeutic procedures are of several kinds, as outlined below.

Class A. Radioactive material administered by mouth, such as radioactive iodine (^{131}I or ^{125}I) for hyperthyroidism, or thyroid cancer.

Class B. Radioactive material injected into body cavities for local irradiation of tissues, or intravenously for systemic irradiation, such as colloidal radioactive phosphorus (^{32}P) and radioactive gold (^{198}Au) and yttrium-labeled microspheres (^{90}Y).

Class C. Radioactive material in tiny containers inserted into tumors and left there permanently, ultimately becoming inactive through radioactive decay; examples are implantation of radon, iodine (^{125}I) or iridium (^{192}Ir) "seeds".

Class D. Brachytherapy. Procedures by which radioactive material is used to deliver beta or gamma radiation at distances up to a few centimeters, either by surface, intracavitary, or interstitial application. Sources are applied to the patient, left for a specified number of hours or days, and removed. Intracavitary sources are usually radium (^{226}Ra), radioactive cobalt (^{60}Co), or radioactive cesium (^{137}Cs) in tubes or needles. External sources may be small boxes or plaques containing the radioactive material. In addition to the nuclides just mentioned, the eye applicator with radioactive strontium (^{90}Sr) is important. Details regarding protection in this type of therapy will be found in NCRP Report No. 40, *Protection Against Radiation From Brachytherapy Sources*.

4.4.2 *Instructions for Patient Care*

For any of the classes of therapeutic procedures, there *shall* have been prepared a sheet of specific instructions for nurses and others involved in patient care. Details regarding care of such patients will be found in NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides*, pages 10–16. In some instances, particularly in Class D procedures, the Radiation Protection Supervisor may consider that some operating room personnel, such as nurses or anesthesiologists need to be classified as occupationally exposed workers, in which case they will receive appropriate instruction. Others *should not* receive exposures at the occupational level; for them the information in the following paragraphs will be useful.

Any patient containing an appreciable quantity of radioactive material may constitute a source of radiation. Certain guidelines *shall* be established for dealing with these patients and individuals involved in the care of these patients *should* be aware of them.

1. The Radiation Protection Supervisor or his deputy *should* determine the radiation exposure rate at a specific distance from the patient and establish limits for the time that any one individual may spend with him. (A diagram showing radiation levels around a typical Class D patient is shown in Appendix F.)
2. A "Radioactivity Precautions" tag *shall* be attached to the chart of each patient who receives a therapeutic amount of a gamma-ray emitting radionuclide. Similar tags *should* be attached to the patient and to his bed. The tag attached to the chart *shall* specify (a) the radionuclide administered and the activity in millicuries at the time of administration, as well as the time and date of administration; and (b) the date on which precautions cease to be required and on which the tag may be removed. (See Appendix E for sample tags.)
3. Nursing and all other hospital personnel may enter the patient's unit to perform their normal hospital duties. They *should not* spend time visiting with the patient or performing such non-vital personal services as bathing, shaving or hairdressing without authorization.
4. Patients *should* be encouraged to care for themselves and to be as self-sufficient as possible, thus reducing the need for close contact with hospital personnel.
5. Visitors, except pregnant women and children, may call during regular visiting hours, but *should* be cautioned to stay at least 6 feet from the patient, and to limit the visit to one hour.
6. Pregnant attendants *should not* be responsible for the routine care of patients under treatment with radioactive materials.
7. Questions regarding the handling or disposal of contaminated clothing or instruments *should* be directed to the Radiation Protection Supervisor or to the physician in charge.

4.4.3 *Patients in Class A (Radioactive material administered by mouth)*

Patients treated for hyperthyroidism present negligible radiation hazards. Those treated for thyroid cancer require special attention. Urine from patients treated with ^{131}I for thyroid cancer contains relatively large amounts of radioactive iodine for a few days and this urine is usually collected for 24 or 48 hours and the radioactive iodine content determined. There is the possibility of contamination of linen, clothing, food utensils, skin, etc. Specific orders for patient care will include instructions as to dealing with spilled urine, vomitus or linen soiled by incontinence. In the event of any of these occurrences, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* be notified immediately. If urine is not to be collected, these patients may use the regular toilet facilities.

4.4.4 *Patients in Class B (Radioactive material injected into body cavities)*

The hazards from intracavitary procedures relate to the fact that the patient may emit penetrating gamma radiation (if radioactive gold colloid was used), or that radioactive material may seep through the puncture wound or closing sutures made during the injection. Surgical dressings and bandages may be assumed to contain radioactive material and *shall* be changed only as directed by the physician in charge; surgical gloves *should* be used in handling such materials. If the dressings are stained or bloody, contamination *should* be assumed to exist and the soiled dressings *should* be handled with forceps or tongs. The physician in charge *should* be notified immediately; the Radiation Protection Supervisor *shall* also be notified promptly. The physician will take suitable steps to stop the discharge and the RPS will monitor the bed, etc., to see if decontamination is necessary. If there is no drainage after the first few days, no further precautions are necessary.

For intravenous procedures, the only problem is the radiation emitted by the patient or his excreta, when gamma-emitting nuclides are used. Here the procedures of Section 4.4.2 apply.

4.4.5 *Patients in Class C (Radioactive material in tiny containers, injected into tumors and left there permanently)*

Patients with permanent implants may emit appreciable amounts of radiation from their bodies for some time. See Section 4.4.2 for suitable procedures.

4.4.6 *Patients in Class D (Brachytherapy)*

Patients with removable radioactive tubes or needles present the greatest potential hazard, since the sources used contain gamma emitters of high activity. The actual exposure rate encountered will depend on the nature of the radionuclide, but it is likely to be considerable a few feet from the patient (see Appendix F). It should be noted that lead-impregnated aprons and gloves offer virtually no protection against high-energy gamma radiation.

Implantation of tubes or needles is usually done in the operating room. Nurses assisting the physician *should* be designated as radiation workers, if they perform this service at frequent intervals. They *should* be provided with radiation monitors if there is a possibility of their receiving 1/4 of the permissible dose for radiation workers (see Section 2.3.1).

To minimize exposure of personnel during these procedures, a number of ingenious "after-loading" devices have been developed. In these, empty applicators are placed in the patient. After the physician is satisfied that they are correctly positioned, the radioactive sources can be introduced rapidly, with minimal exposure to the operator. The sources may be inserted manually or by remote control mechanisms.

The radioactive sources *shall* be delivered to the operating room in a lead-shielded container. There, an individual *shall* be designated as the source custodian; he *shall* be responsible for proper handling, storage, and safety of these sources until they are turned over to the physician. He *shall* keep a written record of receipt and disposition of the material.

During the operative procedure, persons *should not* remain closer than necessary to the radioactive material, either before or after its introduction into the patient.

After the operative procedure, the patient is removed from the operating table, usually by nurses, aides or orderlies, and may be kept in a recovery room for several hours. An aide or orderly may be assigned to care for the patient in this room and eventually to transport the patient to the nursing floor or to the x-ray department. Such an attendant *should* stay as far as possible from the patient and move the bed or stretcher as quickly as practicable. If elevators must be used, non-hospital personnel and particularly women and children *should not* be permitted to ride in them with the patient. If an attendant is required to stay with and transport such patients often, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* be consulted as to the desirability of classifying him as a radiation worker.

If the patient is sent to the x-ray department for source localization films, every effort *should* be made to complete this examination as rapidly as possible. It *should* be remembered that in addition to possible hazard to other waiting patients and to x-ray personnel, there is the possibility of fogging x-ray films, since they are very sensitive to radiation. If afterloading devices are used, the localization films can be made before the radioactive material is inserted, thus eliminating all risk in the x-ray department.

Once these patients are in their own rooms, they *should* stay there unless there are special orders to the contrary. Linen, clothing and bed pans *should* be checked regularly to make sure that no radioactive tube or needle has fallen out of the patient. If a metal object which might be a sealed source is seen, it *shall not* be touched, a moist towel *should* be placed over it and the physician in charge or Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* be called at once. If packing or dressing appears disturbed, the physician in charge *should* be notified immediately, and nothing *shall* be removed from the room until it has been checked for the presence of a sealed source.

Beds of these patients *should* be separated from others by at least six feet and preferably by eight feet in *all* directions.[1] Patients in adjoining beds *should* be past child-bearing age. Normal wall construction may offer little protection against high-energy gamma rays, so that possible exposure of persons in adjoining rooms, in the hallway and on floors above and below *should* be considered.

Nurses and other attendants *should* spend with these patients only the time needed for proper nursing care. The RPS *should* have provided a schedule of permissible times. It may be necessary, on rare occasions, to rotate nursing assignments so that no one receives more than the allowable dose.

Bed baths *should* be omitted while the radioactive material is in place. Perineal care *should not* be given gynecological patients during the treatment period; the perineal pad may be changed when necessary unless orders to the contrary have been written.

Any dressings or bandages used to cover an area of insertion *shall* be changed only by the attending physician or his delegate, and *shall not* be discarded until so directed by the physician. (The purpose of this is to avoid possible loss of a source which might have come loose with the dressings.) Dressings *should* be kept in a safe place while awaiting disposal.

If a radioactive capsule, needle or other container becomes loose or falls out, it shall immediately be picked up gently with forceps, NEVER with the fingers, and placed in a container which shall be left in the patient's room. Both the RPS and the physician in charge shall be notified at once. The radioactive capsule shall be left in the patient's room until permission to remove it has been received from the RPS.

No special precautions are needed for vomitus, sputum, urine, feces or for eating utensils.

---

[1] Whenever possible, patients undergoing brachytherapy *should* be kept in single rooms.

When the radioactive sources are removed from the patient by the physician, they *shall* be returned to the source custodian. The Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* have established a definite routine for the transfer of these sources. On their receipt, the source custodian will complete his inventory and return them to the proper storage area.

4.5 The Attendant's Attitude Toward the Patient

The attitude of the attendant toward the patient is important. The patient is sick and probably uncomfortable and needs consideration; any suggestions of reluctance or avoidance in rendering care on the part of the attendant may be upsetting to the patient. Duties are to be performed quickly, but *should* be done cheerfully and with consideration. The attendant *should not* be afraid of the patient or make him feel that no one wants to touch him. There is less risk in caring for a radiation patient than there would be in caring for one with an infectious disease. If one is mindful of the rules and short cuts are not taken (such as not putting on protective gloves), adequate patient care can be given without fear. Personnel *should* rely on the fact that the Radiation Protection Supervisor and his staff are concerned that no one shall be overexposed and that by living up to their recommendations, the risk is reduced to a minimum.

4.6 Procedure After Death of a Patient Containing an Appreciable Amount of Radioactive Material

Specific rules have been formulated regarding handling of bodies of patients who die in the hospital, while containing administered radioactive material (see NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides*, page 24 ff). Attendants *shall* notify the physician in charge and the Radiation Protection Supervisor immediately of the death of such a patient.

The bodies of patients containing administered radioactive material *shall not* be removed from the patient area without the permission of the Radiation Protection Supervisor.

The attending physician is responsible for the removal of brachytherapy sources and applicators from Class D patients before the body leaves the patient area.

In general, unless embalming or autopsy is to be performed in the hospital morgue, institutional personnel will be involved only in transporting the body. Safety procedures in the morgue are discussed in Section 6.

A radioactivity report *shall* accompany the body to the morgue (see Appendix E for an acceptable form). Detailed information for funeral directors or embalmers has been given in NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides*, pages 25-35.

5. Laboratories

5.1 Physics, Chemistry, and Physiology

In general, quantities of radionuclides used in experimental laboratories are smaller than those used in hospitals. However, technicians may not have been well-trained in correct handling procedures, radiation monitors may not have been provided; in any case the usual ones are useless with nuclides such as radioactive hydrogen (tritium, ^{3}H) or radioactive carbon (^{14}C) which emit only very low energy beta rays. For these reasons, extra care *should* be observed to avoid spillage or radioactivity in the vapor state. When practicable, experimental set-ups should be made on trays lined with absorbent paper. Proper disposal of this paper *should* be directed by the Radiation Protection Supervisor, in accordance with NCRP Report No. 30, *Safe Handling of Radioactive Materials*, pp. 63–67 (see, also, Section 7 of this report). Waterproof gloves *should* be worn while making manipulations involving radionuclides. Special care *should* be taken to avoid contamination of the skin. *Pipetting of radioactive solutions by mouth shall never be done*. There are various simple devices for pipetting radioactive solutions.

In immunoassay or other labeling procedures, frequent use of millicurie amounts of ^{125}I or other nuclides such as ^{3}H may be hazardous. Synthesis of organic compounds is another possible source of millicurie or even larger quantities of radionuclides. Such operations *shall* be carefully supervised. It may be necessary to develop special protective procedures and devices.

Eating, drinking, smoking, and applying cosmetics in the laboratories *shall* be forbidden. Eating *shall* be limited to areas in which radioactivity is never handled, and hands *shall* always be washed thoroughly before eating. In general, precautions *should* be similar to those used in handling hazardous biological materials.

Checks for contamination *should* be made at regular intervals, and at any time when spillage is suspected. Any spilled material *should* be cleaned up immediately or the area isolated and the RPS informed. In testing for contamination, care *should* be taken not to contaminate the measuring instrument.

If studies involve urine, feces or blood from patients or controls, the RPS *should* be consulted as to methods of handling and disposal of unwanted residues after the tests are completed. He *should* have set limits on material to be flushed down drains, and his advice about disposal of solid waste, such as animal carcasses, should be sought.

If contaminated dishes or glassware cannot or need not be discarded, they *shall* be washed thoroughly. (See NCRP Report No. 28, *A Manual of Radioactivity Procedures.*) Gloves *should* always be worn during this procedure. These items *should* then be checked, and stored, if necessary, until the residual activity approaches background level. If any worker has been cut by contaminated glassware, or otherwise injured by contaminated material, he *shall* immediately be checked by the RPS, and referred for treatment if indicated.

Disposal of contaminated apparatus *shall* be made only on the advice of the Radiation Protection Supervisor (see Section 7).

5.2 Animal Laboratories

While, in general, the amount of radioactive material administered to a single animal is small, there may be a number of such animals in the animal laboratory, in different experiments with different nuclides. Those in charge of the work *should* always be aware of radiation levels in animal rooms, and of the routes of excretion for various radiochemicals and drugs.

A particular problem arises in cleaning cages, for the litter may be contaminated. In such cases, the person doing the cleaning *should* wear gloves and protective shoe covers if he enters the cage. Contaminated litter *shall not* be disposed of in the general trash, but handled as radioactive waste (see Section 7).

Handling animals containing radioactive materials, weighing them, drawing blood, etc., may result in radiation exposure. The extent of the exposure, if any, will depend on the specific characteristics of the radionuclide being used, the size and number of animals involved, and the procedure being followed in their handling. In general, the same procedures *shall* be used for these animals as for human beings undergoing similar treatment. Animals that have been made radioactive *should not* be petted or groomed; carrying them *should* be avoided if overexposure to radiation is likely to result.

The Radiation Protection Supervisor *shall* be informed as to the types of research being conducted with radioactive materials in experimental animals, and may recommend classification of some individuals working with these animals as occupationally exposed.

6. The Morgue

When a patient who has received a therapeutic dose of a radionuclide, or whose chart indicates that "radiation precautions" are in force, dies in the hospital before the lapse of six or more half-lives of the nuclide, the physician in charge of the case and the Radiation Protection Supervisor *shall* be notified before the body is removed. Detailed instructions for handling, tagging, transporting, autopsy procedures and instructions to morticians regarding such patients are given in NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides*, pages 24–36.

The Radiation Protection Supervisor will determine whether a radiation hazard exists in handling the body and will issue instructions accordingly. The nurse, or other involved attendant, *should not* attempt to assume responsibility for its proper disposition.

If the patient has received brachytherapy[2], the radioactive sources *shall* be removed from his body by the physician in charge before it leaves the patient area. Once these sealed sources are removed, there is no further radiation problem.

In the other three classes of radiation therapy, residual radioactive material may still be found in the body tissues. Radionuclides may be concentrated in an organ, as in the thyroid in radioiodine therapy, or in tumors implanted with radioactive material, as in Class C therapy; or radionuclides may be distributed through body tissue or fluids as in Class A and B procedures. If there is to be an autopsy, or if the body is to be embalmed, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* indicate what tissues or body fluids are to be removed promptly (at autopsy) and what special precautions *should* be taken.

If there are radioactive fluids, every effort should be made to see that they are properly discharged down the drain without spilling on the floor or splashing neighboring areas. In case of accidental overflow, the fluid *should* be taken up immediately, as completely as possible, with dry disposable waste held in tongs or forceps, and promptly put into a suitable receptacle (a leak-proof container). Special care *should* be taken to prevent the floor of the morgue from becoming contaminated. Such contamination can be transferred to the shoes, and so be spread through the institution. In addition, the floors of such rooms are often of rough concrete or other material that is difficult to decontaminate, and flushing them or scrubbing them with water may only spread the contamination. It may be helpful to tape a large sheet of absorbent material, underlaid with plastic, to the floor to provide a working region easy to decontaminate. Protective shoe covers *should* be worn by all persons in this region, and removed before they leave the work area. Wearing plastic aprons and gloves also helps to prevent contamination of clothing or skin. Care should be taken in removing protective clothing so as not to contaminate the skin or radionuclide-free areas. (See also NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides.)*

---

[2] See page 22 for specifications of the four classes of therapy.

7. Disposal of Radioactive Waste

7.1 General

Waste contaminated with radioactive material may be encountered in the hospital or in any of the laboratories. This may be the result of an accident, a spill, vomiting by a patient who has just received a therapeutic dose or it may be a residue from a planned procedure. It is often the inevitable result of cleaning up in a laboratory where radionuclides are used. In any case, the Radiation Protection Supervisor has the responsibility for proper disposal of such wastes.

Radioactivity decreases by natural decay. Consequently excess radioactive materials which decay rapidly can be stored until their activities become low enough to permit discard. For longer lived materials, the two common forms of disposal may be described as *dispersion*, and *concentration*. Dispersion is accomplished by mixing the radioactive material with so much diluting substance – water, air or other materials – that release of the diluted material into the environment, even with subsequent continuous intake by humans, will not result in the accumulation of the dose limit. Concentration is accomplished by reducing the volume as much as possible, and preparing and packaging the material to be turned over to a licensed disposal service for removal and burial.

Appropriate government agencies have issued very detailed instructions for disposal of radioactive materials. (See Code of Federal Regulations, Title 10, Energy, Part 20, Standards for Protection Against Radiation, Sections 20.301–20.305, Waste Disposal.)

Maximum permissible concentrations of radionuclides in air and water have been established for occupational exposure (see NCRP Report No. 22, *Maximum Permissible Body Burdens and Maximum Permissible Concentrations of Radionuclides in Air and Water for Occupational Exposure)*. For the general populace, concentrations should be $^1/_{10}$ of these. Hence, it must be assured that radioactive material discharged into air or water systems will be diluted to those concentrations before there is any probability of their intake by people or animals. Report No. 22 gives concentrations for both a 40-hour and a 168-hour week. For the general populace, concentrations should be $^1/_{10}$ of the latter.

7.2 Gaseous Waste

Gaseous waste may arise in the course of some chemical reactions, or it may result from clinical tests with radioactive gases such as krypton (^{85}Kr) or xenon (^{133}Xe). Chemical procedures which may release radioactive gases *shall* always be carried out in a self-enclosed hood with a proper trap, which is not connected into the regular institutional ventilating system. It *should* have a separate discharge flue and it *should not* be possible for the effluent to enter a near-by window or the air intake of a regular ventilating system. Such discharge will usually ensure sufficient dilution by atmospheric air so that by the time it can be inhaled, it will be well below the permissible concentration. However, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* determine that this is the case.

The radioactivity of air exhaled by patients undergoing tests with radioactive gases depends on the nuclide and the dose administered. Sometimes, if doses are small and infrequent, immediate exhalation into the laboratory is permitted. More often, an arrangement is made whereby the exhaled air enters a duct leading outside the building. In this case, it must be assured that the output of this duct cannot enter other laboratories or occupied space until adequate dilution has occurred. For still larger doses, it may be necessary to have the patient exhale into a closed system, such as an airtight bag or a specially designed trap, which can later be emptied in a place such as a specific isotope hood, or the roof, where there is less risk. Here again, if the gas is disposed of by dilution in the open air, precautions must be taken to prevent the radioactive material from entering a window or a ventilating system. The contaminated air should be carried away by a breeze which will ensure its dilution. The person emptying the bag *should* be instructed by the Radiation Protection Supervisor as to how to avoid inhaling the gas. When work with radioactive gases is done on a routine basis, a preferred method of disposal is by means of a gas trap, which will contain the radioactive gas and eliminate the need for disposal into the atmosphere.

7.3 Liquid Waste

Liquid waste may result from unused residues of stock radionuclides, from chemical or biological experiments, from cleaning-up procedures in the hot lab or elsewhere, or from patients' excreta. The amounts of various nuclides or combinations of them which may be introduced into the sanitary sewage system are strictly prescribed (see reference to Code of Federal Regulations in Section 7.1). Most hospital wastes will fall within these limits, but some long-lived nuclides used in laboratory studies may not. Residues of radioactive material of fairly short half-life can usually be stored in shielded containers until they decay to levels low enough to be put into the sewer (see Section 4.2.4). For long half-life nuclides, it may be necessary to keep the material in specifically designated storage containers until they can be turned over to a licensed waste disposal service. In this case, the storage location, the radiation protection, and the integrity of the container used for this purpose *shall* be checked by the Radiation Protection Supervisor.

Patients' excreta are currently exempted from the limitations in the Code of Federal Regulations. The only case where a question might arise is with a patient who has received a large dose of radioactive iodine for treatment of thyroid cancer. A large part of the nuclide will be excreted in the urine in the first 48 hours. This is usually collected and taken to the laboratory for testing after which it can be disposed of by batches, with large quantities of diluting water. If the patient is allowed to use the regular toilet facilities, no special precautions are required.

7.4 Solid Wastes

Solid wastes may consist of rags and papers used in decontamination or clean-up operations, chemical precipitates, contaminated equipment, animal carcasses, etc. It would seem that incineration would be a good way to dispose of burnable material, but there are two objections to use of the regular institutional incinerator. Part of the radioactivity may go up the flue as vapor, or as a fine light ash carrying radioactive material. Such output would have to be carefully monitored at the outlet, at points of nearest occupancy and at the incinerator to guard against build-up of radioactivity in the flue. Material not thus lost is left behind in the ashes, offering a hazard to anyone cleaning out the furnace. For these reasons, disposal by incineration is generally not acceptable, and requires special approval by the appropriate government agency. Accordingly, if the radionuclide has a reasonably short half-life, it may be stored for decay in a secure place. If this is not practicable, a licensed commercial disposal company should be used.

APPENDIX A

Maximum Permissible Doses and Dose Limits

(From NCRP Report No. 39: *Basic Radiation Protection Criteria*, p. 106)

Maximum Permissible Dose Equivalent for Occupational Exposure	
Whole Body	5 rem in any one year, after age 18
Skin	15 rem in any one year
Hands	75 rem in any one year (not more than 25 rem per quarter)
Forearms	30 rem in any one year (not more than 10 per quarter)
Other Organs	15 rem in any one year
Pregnant Women (with respect to the fetus)	0.5 rem during gestation period
Dose Limits for the General Public or Occasionally Exposed Persons	
Whole Body	0.5 rem in any one year

APPENDIX B Radiation Detecting Devices

Detector	Types of Radiation Measured	Typical Full Scale Readings	Use	Minimum Energy Measured	Advantages	Possible Disadvantages
Scintillation counter	Beta, x, gamma	0.02 mR/h to 20 mR/h	Survey	20 keV for x rays. Variable for betas	1. High sensitivity 2. Rapid response	1. Fragile 2. Relatively expensive
Geiger-Müller counter	Beta, x, gamma	0.2 to 20 mR/ h or 800 to 80,000 counts/min	Survey	20 keV for x rays. 150 keV for betas	Rapid response	1. Strong energy dependence 2. Possible paralysis of response at high count rates or exposure rates 3. Sensitive to microwave fields 4. May be affected by ultra violet light
Ionization chamber	Beta, x, gamma	3 mR/h to 500 R/h	Survey	20 keV for x rays. Variable for betas	Low energy dependence	1. Relatively low sensitivity 2. May be slow to respond
Pocket ionization chamber	X, gamma	200 mR to 200 R	Survey and monitoring	50 keV	1. Relatively inexpensive 2. Gives estimate of integrated dose	1. Subject to accidental discharge
Film	Beta, x, gamma	10 mR and up	Survey and monitoring	20 keV for x rays, 200 keV for betas	3. Small size 1. Inexpensive 2. Gives estimate of integrated dose 3. Provides permanent record	1. False readings produced by heat, certain vapors and pressure 2. Great variations with film type and batch 3. Strong energy dependence for low energy x rays

APPENDIX C

Exposure Rates from Secondary Radiation to Persons Manually Restraining Patients During Radiographic Procedures

Basis of Measurements. Measurements made on adult trunk phantom. Eye location assumed to be 18 inches above table top, at edge of table. Gonad location taken at table top level, 6 inches from edge. Phantom center 12 inches from edge of table. X-ray unit: 3-phase overhead tube;[3] leakage radiation less than 1 percent of useful beam. Target-film distance: 40 inches. Film size 14 × 17 inches.[4]

Results.

Operating potential (kVp)	Exposure in milliroentgens per 100 milliampere-seconds[3]	
	Exposure at eye location	Exposure at gonad level under 0.5 mm lead apron
60	15	0.08
75	30	0.3
90	40	1.5
110	75	2.0

Use. To determine actual exposure, multiply values in table by appropriate exposure factors, such as those listed in footnote 3.

[3] Recommended conversion factors for other operating conditions

Single phase generator	0.5
Exposure at x mAs	x/100
8 x 10 inch film	0.7

[4] Unpublished data by Christopher Marshall and Gerald Shapiro.

APPENDIX D

Physical Data for Some Commonly Used Radionuclides

Radionuclide	Half-life	Radiations[a]	Exposure rate from gamma rays at 1 meter from 100 mCi (point source)
			mR/hour
Calcium-45	165 days	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Carbon-14	5730 years	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Cesium-137 (with barium-137m)	30 years	Beta , Gamma	32.6
Chromium-51	27.8 days	E.C., X ray, Gamma	1.5
Cobalt-57	270 days	E.C., X ray,	8
Cobalt-60	5.26 years	Beta$^-$, Gamma	130
Copper-64	12.80 hours	E.C., X ray, Beta$^-$, Beta$^+$, Gamma	11
Gallium-72	14.12 hours	Beta$^-$, Gamma	136
Gold-198	2.697 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	23
Hydrogen-3	12.262 years	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Iodine-125	60.2 days	E.C., X ray, Gamma	6
Iodine-131	8.05 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	22
Iridium-192	74.2 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	48
Iron-55	2.60 years	E.C., X ray,	72
Iron-59	45.6 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	68
Molybdenum-99	66.7 hours	Beta$^-$, Gamma	12.9
Phosphorus-32	14.28 days	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Radium-226 (in equilibrium with daughters)	1602 years	Alpha, Beta$^-$, Gamma	82.5

[a] Beta$^-$ = negative electron emitted from an atomic nucleus.
Beta$^+$ = positive electron emitted from an atomic nucleus.
E.C. = capture of an orbital electron by the nucleus of an atom.
I.T. = isomeric transition – decay of a nuclide by emission of a gamma ray or an internal conversion electron to an isomer of lower quantum energy.

Radionuclide	Half-life	Radiations[a]	Exposure rate from gamma rays at 1 meter from 100 mCi (point source)
			mR/hour
Radon-222	3.8229 days	Alpha, Gamma	82.5
Strontium-89	52.7 days	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Strontium-90 (with yttrium-90)	27.7 years	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Tantalum-182	115.1 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	68
Technetium-99m	6.049 hours	I.T., X ray, Gamma	5.6
Xenon-133	5.27 days	Beta$^-$, Gamma	4.4
Yttrium-90	64.0 hours	Beta$^-$	No gamma
Zinc-65	245 days	E.C., X ray, Beta$^+$, Gamma	29

[a] Beta$^-$ = negative electron emitted from an atomic nucleus.
Beta$^+$ = positive electron emitted from an atomic nucleus.
E.C. = capture of an orbital electron by the nucleus of an atom.
I.T. = isomeric transition – decay of a nuclide by emission of a gamma ray or an internal conversion electron to an isomer of lower quantum energy.

APPENDIX E

Caution Signs, Warnings, and Labels

Appropriate caution signs are required in all areas and on all containers where significant amounts of radiation or radioactive materials may be found. These must bear the three-bladed radioactive caution symbol in magenta or purple on a yellow background. The specific label to be used depends on the type and degree of hazard present.

There are three classifications of such signs or labels:

1. For Areas or Rooms. These are large yellow placards bearing the magenta symbol and are affixed to the door or entrance to the area. Figure 1 is an example of a radiation area sign.

(a)	CAUTION RADIATION AREA	Areas in which a major portion of the body could receive more than 5 millirem in one hour or 100 millirem in any 5 consecutive days.
(b)	CAUTION HIGH RADIATION AREA	Areas in which a major portion of the body could receive 100 millirem in one hour.
(c)	CAUTION AIRBORNE RADIATION AREA	Areas in which airborne radioactive materials exist in concentrations exceeding values listed in federal regulations (10 CFR Part 20).

2. For Containers.

(a) Shipping Containers.

The Department of Transportation requires that a label to be affixed to opposite sides of any package containing radioactive material (see

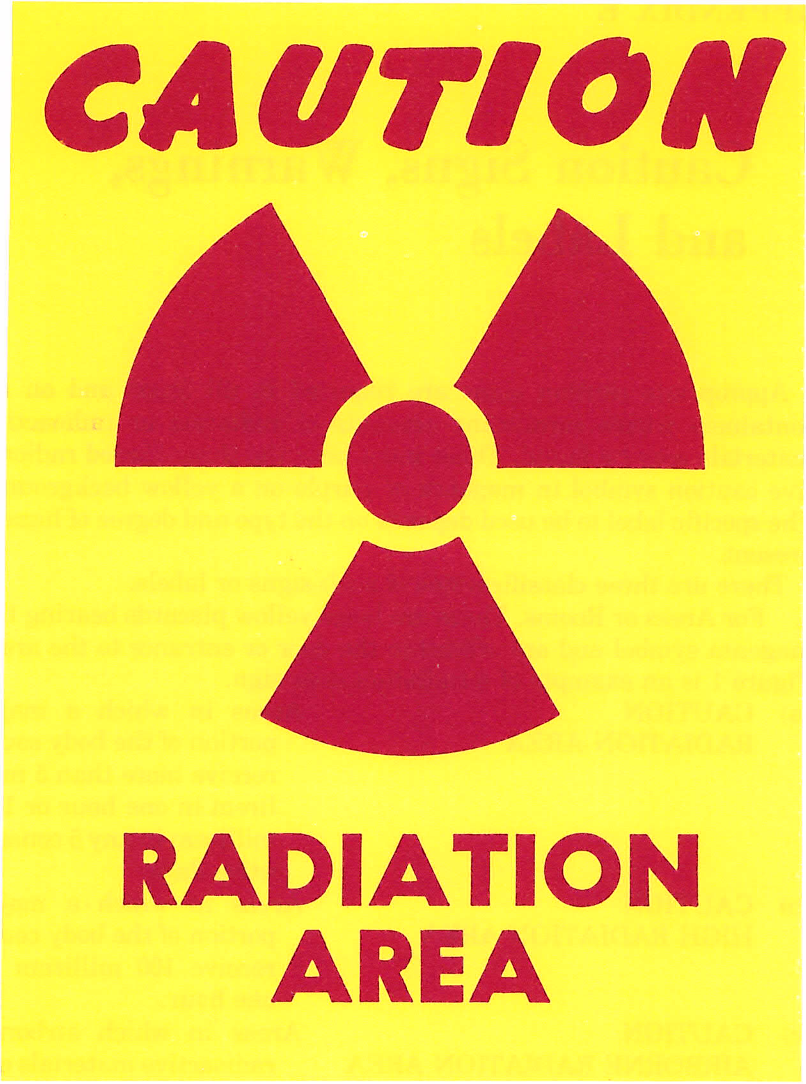


Fig. 1. Example of a radiation area sign.

Figure 2). The marks I, II, III indicate the degree of hazard. The radioactive content and Transport Index (see Figure 2) must be clearly shown.

(b) In the Institution.

A variety of such signs and labels is available for storage regions and containers (see Figure 3). Each individual container should have a label stating the material in it, the amount, and the date for which the listed value applies.

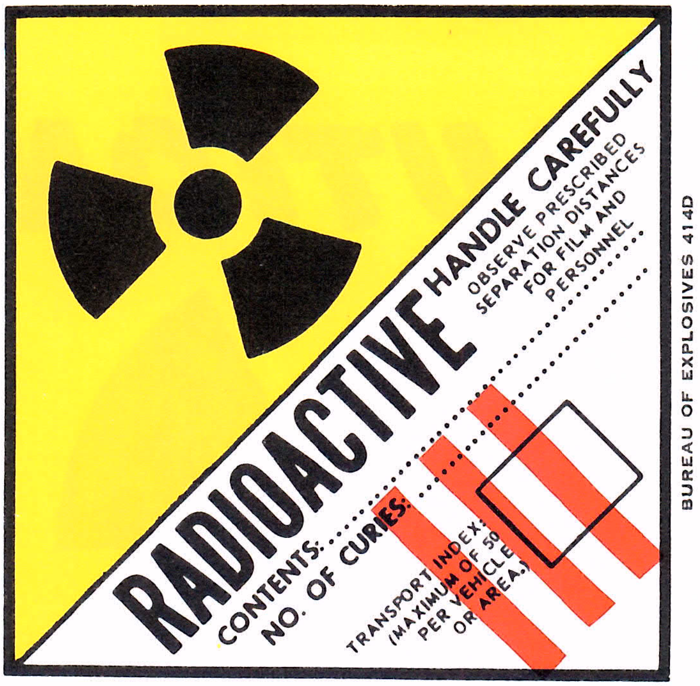

RADIOACTIVE
HANDLE CAREFULLY
OBSERVE PRESCRIBED SEPARATION DISTANCES FOR FILM AND PERSONNEL
CONTENTS:
NO. OF CURIES:
TRANSPORT INDEX: (MAXIMUM OF 50 PER VEHICLE OR AREA.)
BUREAU OF EXPLOSIVES 414D

Fig. 2. Shipping container label with a transport index of III.

3. For Hospital Rooms, Charts, and Patients.

(a) Patient's Chart.

A patient receiving a therapeutic amount of a gamma-emitting nuclide must have a "Radioactive Precautions" tag attached to his chart (see Figures 4, 5 and 6).

(b) Patient's Beds and Persons.

When patient areas or beds are conspicuously labelled, problems may arise with uninformed hospital personnel. The fear that many people have of radiation may cause patients containing radioactive material to receive inadequate care while radiation precautions are in force. However, such tagging is desirable. For details regarding these prob-

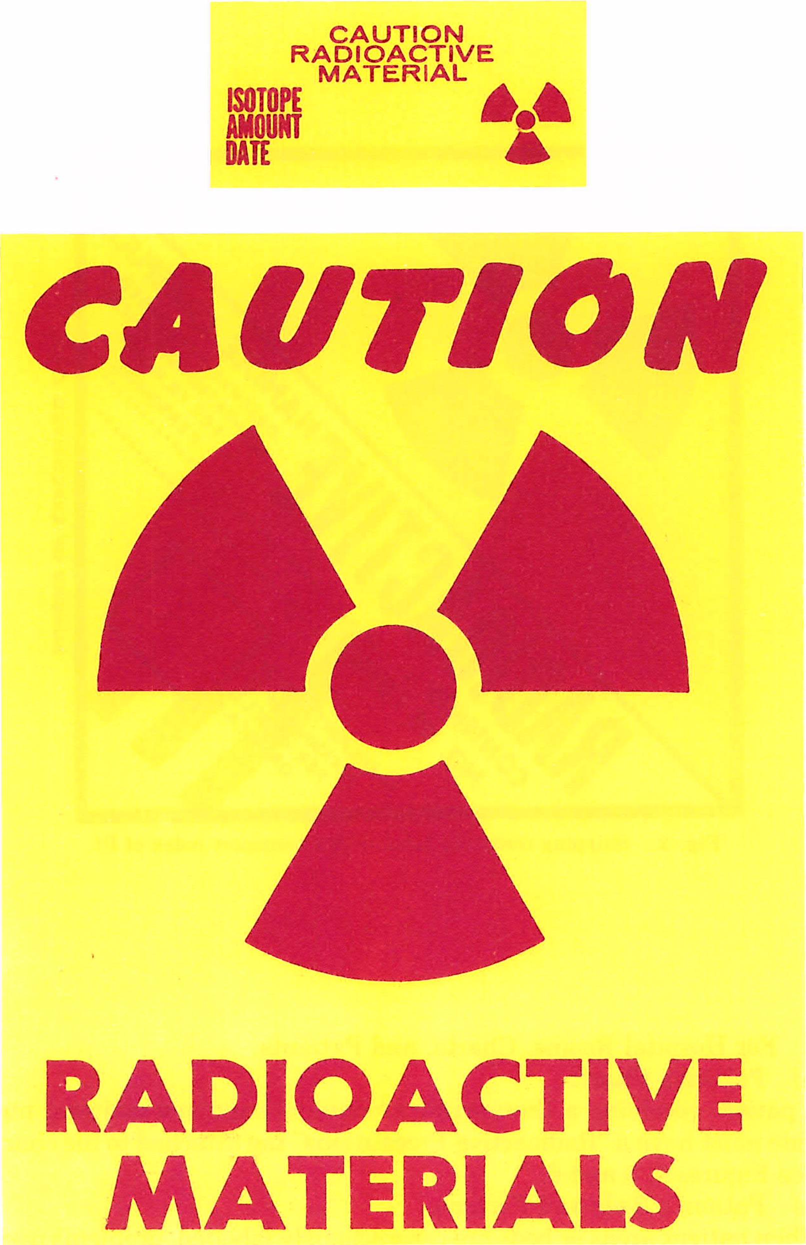
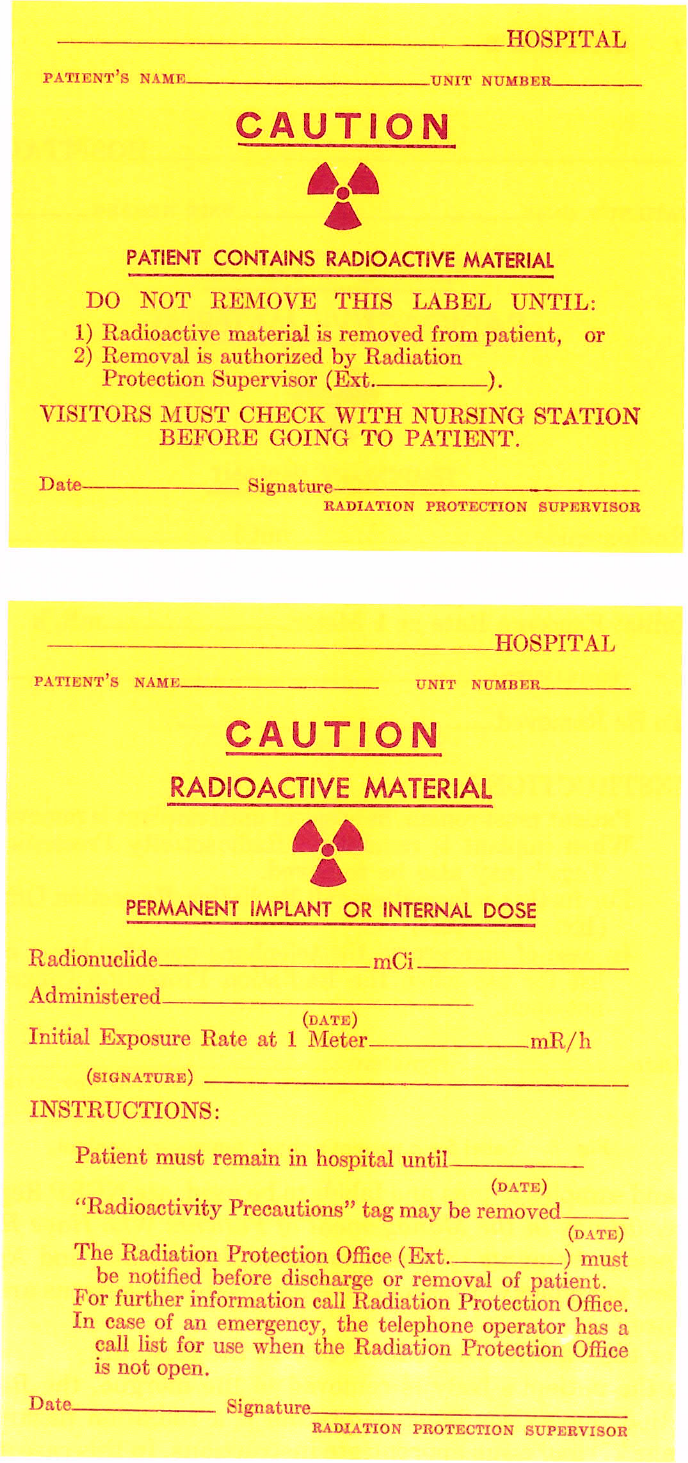


Fig. 3. Institutional storage region and container labels.



________________________HOSPITAL

PATIENT'S NAME__________________UNIT NUMBER________

CAUTION

PATIENT CONTAINS RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL

DO NOT REMOVE THIS LABEL UNTIL:

1) Radioactive material is removed from patient, or
2) Removal is authorized by Radiation Protection Supervisor (Ext.________).

VISITORS MUST CHECK WITH NURSING STATION BEFORE GOING TO PATIENT.

Date__________ Signature____________________
RADIATION PROTECTION SUPERVISOR

________________________HOSPITAL

PATIENT'S NAME__________________ UNIT NUMBER________

CAUTION

RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL

PERMANENT IMPLANT OR INTERNAL DOSE

Radionuclide_______________mCi______________

Administered______________________
(DATE)

Initial Exposure Rate at 1 Meter__________mR/h

(SIGNATURE) __________________________

INSTRUCTIONS:

Patient must remain in hospital until________
(DATE)

"Radioactivity Precautions" tag may be removed______
(DATE)

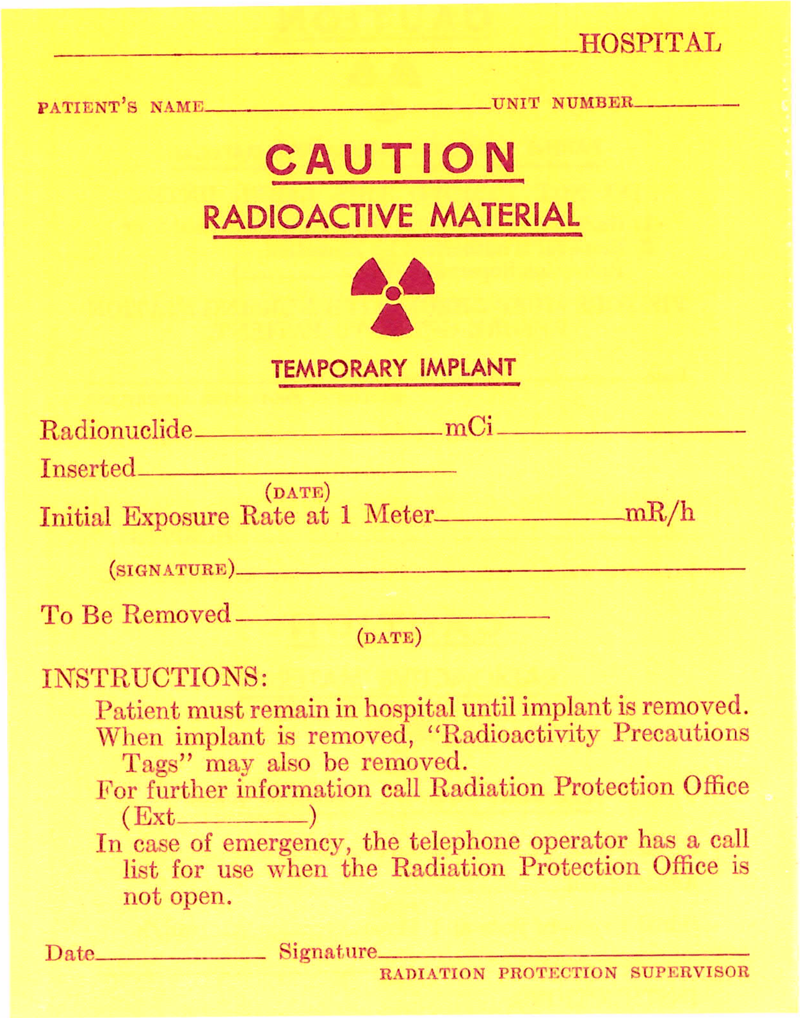
The Radiation Protection Office (Ext.________) must be notified before discharge or removal of patient.

For further information call Radiation Protection Office.

In case of an emergency, the telephone operator has a call list for use when the Radiation Protection Office is not open.

Date__________ Signature____________________
RADIATION PROTECTION SUPERVISOR

Fig. 4. Labels for patient's chart.



____________________HOSPITAL

PATIENT'S NAME____________________UNIT NUMBER__________

CAUTION

RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL

TEMPORARY IMPLANT

Radionuclide______________mCi______________

Inserted______________
(DATE)

Initial Exposure Rate at 1 Meter__________mR/h

(SIGNATURE)______________________________

To Be Removed______________
(DATE)

INSTRUCTIONS:

Patient must remain in hospital until implant is removed.

When implant is removed, "Radioactivity Precautions Tags" may also be removed.

For further information call Radiation Protection Office (Ext________)

In case of emergency, the telephone operator has a call list for use when the Radiation Protection Office is not open.

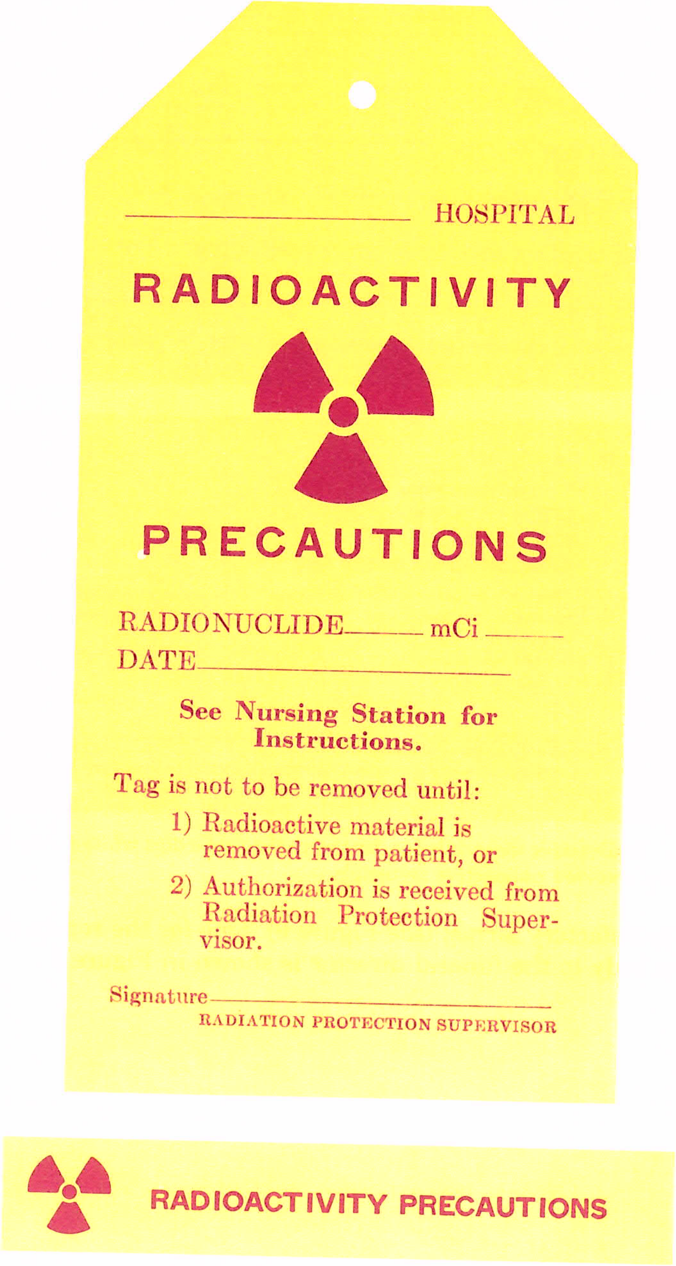
Date__________ Signature______________________
RADIATION PROTECTION SUPERVISOR

Fig. 5. Label for a patient's chart: temporary implant.

lems, and samples of tags and labels to be used, see NCRP Report No. 37, *Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides,* Section 3.3, and Appendix II. A few examples of tags and labels for beds and persons are shown in Figure 6.

(c) For the Patient Who Dies While in the Hospital.

Before the patient's body is removed to the morgue, the Radiation Protection Supervisor must determine if a radiation hazard exists (see page 27) and issue appropriate instructions. In this case a "radioactive materials" tag should be attached to the body. There are



____________________ HOSPITAL

RADIOACTIVITY

PRECAUTIONS

RADIONUCLIDE______ mCi ______

DATE____________________

See Nursing Station for Instructions.

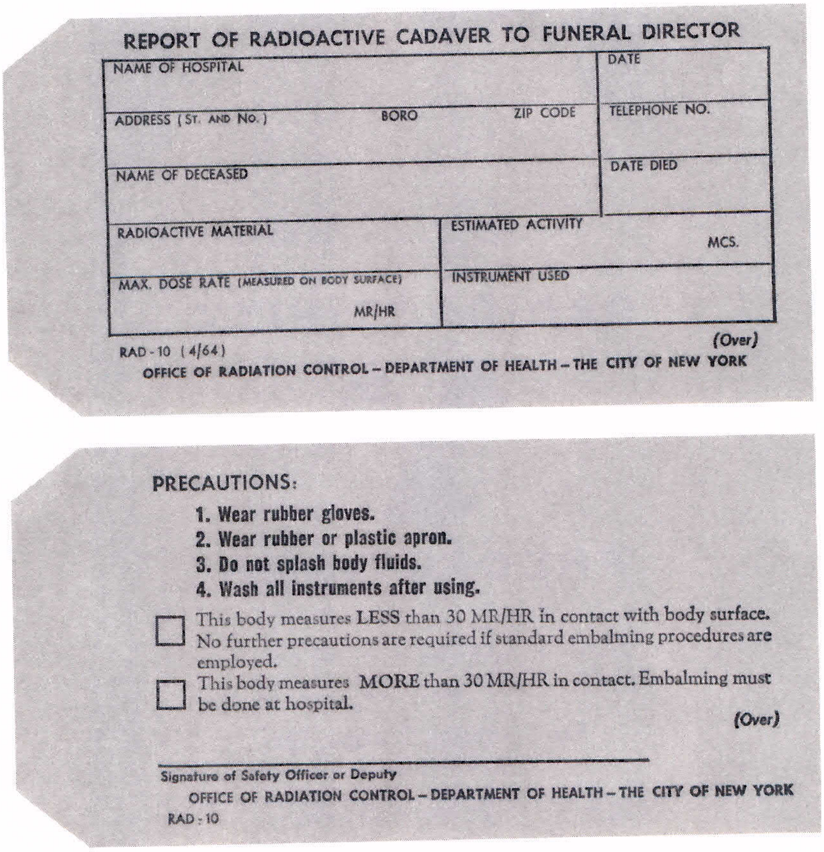
Tag is not to be removed until:

1) Radioactive material is removed from patient, or
2) Authorization is received from Radiation Protection Supervisor.

Signature________________________
RADIATION PROTECTION SUPERVISOR

RADIOACTIVITY PRECAUTIONS

Fig. 6. Radioactivity tags.



REPORT OF RADIOACTIVE CADAVER TO FUNERAL DIRECTOR

NAME OF HOSPITAL			DATE
ADDRESS (ST. AND No.)	BORO	ZIP CODE	TELEPHONE NO.
NAME OF DECEASED			DATE DIED
RADIOACTIVE MATERIAL	ESTIMATED ACTIVITY MCS.		
MAX. DOSE RATE (MEASURED ON BODY SURFACE) MR/HR	INSTRUMENT USED		

RAD-10 (4/64)

(Over)

OFFICE OF RADIATION CONTROL – DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH – THE CITY OF NEW YORK

PRECAUTIONS:

1. **Wear rubber gloves.**
2. **Wear rubber or plastic apron.**
3. **Do not splash body fluids.**
4. **Wash all instruments after using.**

☐ This body measures LESS than 30 MR/HR in contact with body surface. No further precautions are required if standard embalming procedures are employed.

☐ This body measures MORE than 30 MR/HR in contact. Embalming must be done at hospital.

(Over)

Signature of Safety Officer or Deputy

OFFICE OF RADIATION CONTROL – DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH – THE CITY OF NEW YORK

RAD-10

Fig. 7. Radioactive materials tag for the patient who dies while in the hospital after having received radioactive materials.

various satisfactory forms; (see Figure 6). One for the report of a radioactive body to the funeral director is shown in Figure 7.

APPENDIX F

Approximate Exposure Rates Around the Bed of A Patient Containing 100 mg of Radium[5]

The diagram (Fig. 8) can be used as a guide in determining possible exposure of personnel in attendance on radioactive patients. For example, consider nursing care for a patient with 100 mg of radium in an intrauterine applicator.This might require that the nurse spend half an hour at the patient's bedside and one hour at 3 feet from the bed, during the entire course of therapy. In such a case, she would be exposed to a maximum of 150 mR.[6] As a nonradiation worker, she is allowed 500 mR per year, so that she could nurse three or four such patients in a year and still not exceed the dose limit for the general public or for a pregnant woman. Anyone caring for such patients should wear a radiation monitor. If not of childbearing age, she can be classified as a radiation worker, in which case she could be permitted to receive ten times as much radiation, and so could nurse such a patient every other week without exceeding her permissible dose.

Since the exposure rate for a given radionuclide is proportional to the activity, if the patient contains a smaller amount of activity, the resultant exposure rate will be correspondingly less. For example, if the patient contained 50 mg of radium, the exposure rates would be $^1/_2$ of those shown in Fig. 8. For 100 mCi of gold or iodine the rates would be $^1/_3$ of those shown.

[5] Adapted from a paper by Nurnberger Carl, "Radiation Exposure of Non-Radiologic Hospital Personnel during Treatment of Patients", Am. J. Roentgenol., Rad. Ther. and Nuclear Med. 83, 1507-1513, March 1960. Courtesy of the author and the American Journal of Roentgenology.

[6] One half hour at 200 mR per hour equals 100 mR. One our at 50 mR per hour equals 50 mR. Total equals 150 mR.

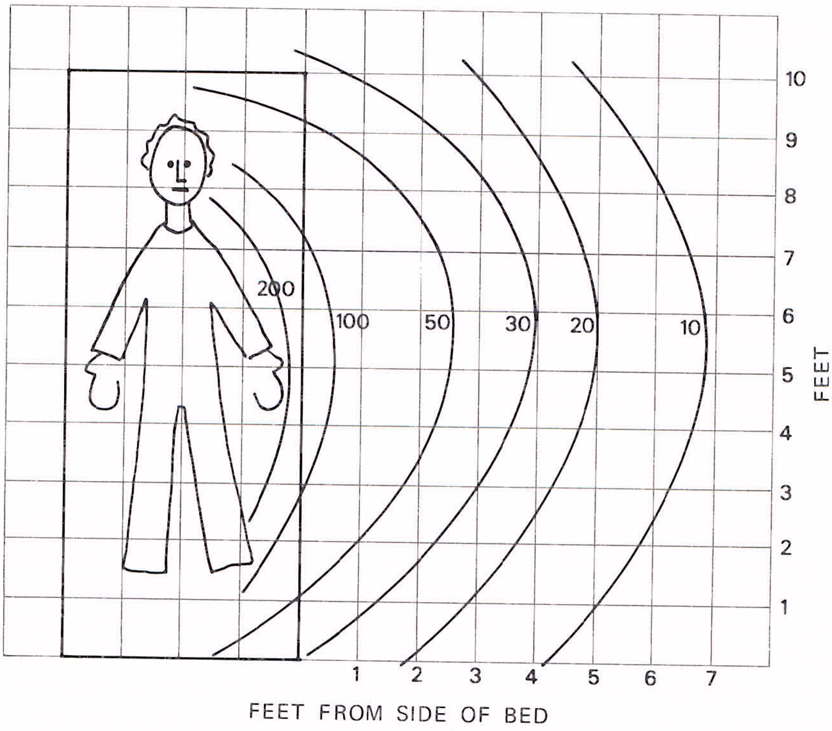


Fig. 8. Approximate exposure rates (mR/h) in region around the bed of a patient containing 100 mg of radium or 300 mCi of gold (^{198}Au) or 300 mCi of iodine (^{131}I). Note that although only one side is shown, the exposure pattern completely surrounds the body. Furthermore, if the patient's bed is near a wall of beaverboard or other light material, the radiation penetrates the wall with little reduction, and the exposure pattern continues beyond the wall.

APPENDIX G

Emergency Procedures

A. *Spills.*

Accidental spillage of radioactive material is rare, but cannot be prevented absolutely, and may occur in any laboratory, in any hall or passageway traversed by messengers transporting such material, or in any hospital room or ward where a patient may vomit or be incontinent.

Except for a major accident to a shipping container or a serious spill in the hot laboratory, the amount of radioactive material involved in a spill will usually be small and the radiation from it will not constitute a serious hazard. The real danger is the spread of the contamination on shoes or other contaminated garments. The following is a general outline of the procedure to be followed in the event of a spill.

1. Confine the spill immediately, by dropping paper towels or other absorbent material onto it.
2. Put on waterproof gloves.
3. Check shoes for visible signs of contamination. If it appears possible that they are contaminated, remove shoes when leaving the contaminated region.
4. If fans, ventilators, or air conditioners are operating in the area, they should be shut off. Preferably this should be done by someone not involved in the spill and therefore not likely to spread contamination.
5. Mark off or isolate in some way the entire suspect area and police it to be sure that nobody walks through it.
6. CALL THE RADIATION PROTECTION SUPERVISOR. If his number is not posted in a convenient place, and you do not know it, call the telephone operator, report an emergency and ask her to find the supervisor.
7. In general, inexperienced personnel should not attempt to clean up a spill. It is better to wait a little while for the supervisor than to risk spreading the contamination by erroneous procedures. If the spilled material is covered and by-

standers are kept a few feet away, there is little or no danger from the radiation.

8. If any of the spilled material has splashed onto a person or his clothing, immediate steps should be taken to remove it. Laboratory coats or outer garments should be taken off and left in the contaminated area. Hands or other skin areas should be washed thoroughly with soap. If it is certain that shoes or feet are not contaminated, it is permissible to walk to a washing facility, which subsequently, however, must be treated as a contaminated area until cleared by the Radiation Protection Supervisor. If there is doubt about contamination of the feet, a washbowl and soap should be brought to the suspect area for cleaning them.
9. When the Radiation Protection Supervisor arrives, he will bring decontamination materials and a survey meter, and the clean-up operation will proceed under his supervision.
10. If the RPS is not immediately available, or cleanup must proceed without him, one person *should* do the work. He *should* put on waterproof gloves, shoe covers and a surgical face mask if it is available. He will then take up the spilled material with absorbent paper, which must be handled with forceps or tongs, and deposit it immediately in a waterproof container. After as much as possible has been removed in this way, the surface *should* be washed with damp—not wet—rags held in forceps, always working toward the center of the contaminated area rather than away from it.
11. A survey meter *should* have been obtained from the office of the Radiation Protection Supervisor, and careful monitoring carried out during this procedure, on area and personnel. The meter *should* preferably be operated by someone who is not involved in the spill, so that he is not likely to contaminate the instrument.
12. Reduction of counting rate to five times background, over an area of 1 or 2 square feet or to ten times background over a few square inches is usually satisfactory, especially for short-lived nuclides. Eventually, the Radiation Protection Supervisor *should* check the area and give it clearance.
13. When the operation is finished, gloves and other protective garments *should* be carefully checked for residual contamination. If any is found, the garments *should* be left with the other contaminated material for ultimate disposal by the RPS.

B. *Loss of a Sealed Source.*

The following is a general outline of the procedure to be followed in the event of loss of a sealed source:

1. Call the Radiation Protection Supervisor.
2. If all sources are supposed to have been removed from the patient, he *should* be checked with a survey meter to make sure that none has inadvertently been left behind.
3. Try to make sure that all bandages, linen, and bedding have been kept in the patient's room. If this is not the case, try to stop them on the way to the laundry or the incinerator.
4. Check all this material, a little at a time. Then check the room, to be sure the source is not on the floor or furniture.
5. Check the drain trap of any accessible plumbing facility.
6. Check the incinerator.
7. Check all barrels of ashes or garbage. The more active the source, the easier it should be to find it.

C. *A Ruptured or Broken Sealed Source.*

1. Shut off all fans and ventilators.
2. Drop damp towels on the suspect material; throw nothing away.
3. Call the Radiation Protection Supervisor. He will remove the questionable material and check the area for contamination.
4. If possible, evacuate the room. If not, keep all personnel several feet from the suspect material until the RPS arrives.

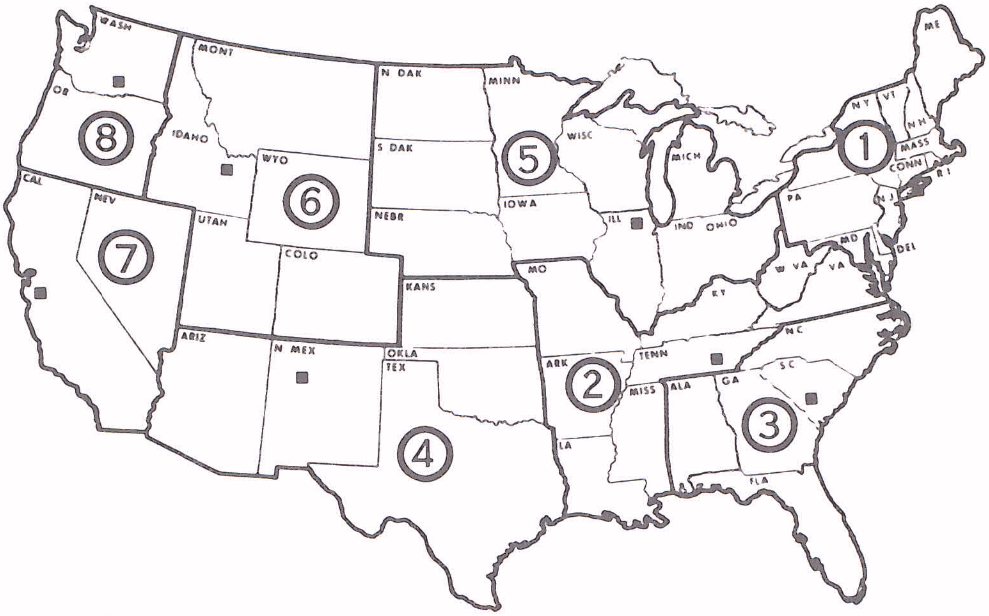
D. *A Major Calamity—Fire, Earthquake, A Massive Spill*

1. Call the Radiation Supervisor.
2. Prevent access to suspect areas, or removal of anything from them. Shut off ventilating system; close drains if possible.
3. Do not try to do anything until the RPS arrives. He must be given complete charge.
4. If for any reason he cannot take charge, call the nearest office of the Energy Research and Development Administration (see Appendix H).

APPENDIX H

U.S. Regional Coordinating Offices for Radiological Assistance

In case of a really grave emergency, or one with which local personnel cannot cope, assistance can be had quickly from one of the Energy Research and Development Administration (ERDA) regional coordinating offices. Geographical areas of responsibility are shown in the diagram below, and telephone numbers are listed below.



Regional Coordinating Office	Telephone for Assistance	Post Office Address
1. Brookhaven Area Office	516-345-220	Upton, L.I., N.Y. 11973
2. Oak Ridge Operations Office	615-483-8611 Ext. 3-4510	P.O. Box E Oak Ridge, Tennessee 37830
3. Savannah River Operations Office	803-824-6331 Ext. 3333 (This is in N. Augusta, S.C.)	P.O. Box A Aiken, South Carolina 29801
4. Albuquerque Operations Office	505-264-4467	P.O. Box 5400 Albuquerque, New Mexico 87115
5. Chicago Operations Office	312-739-7711 Ext. 2111 duty hours Ext. 4451 off hours	9800 S. Cass Ave. Argonne, Illinois 60439
6. Idaho Operations Office	208-526-0111 Ext. 1515	P.O. Box 2108 Idaho Falls, Idaho 83401
7. San Francisco Operations Office	415-273-4237	1333 Broadway Oakland, California 94612
8. Richland Operations Office	509-942-7381	P.O. Box 550 Richland, Washington 94612

APPENDIX I

Glossary

absorbed dose: The mean energy imparted by ionizing radiation to matter, per unit of mass of irradiated material, at the place of interest. The unit of absorbed dose is the rad. See rad.

absorbed dose rate: Absorbed dose per unit time.

activity (radioactive): The number of radioactive disintegrations occurring per unit time in a given quantity of radionuclide. The unit of activity is the curie. See curie.

after-loading technique: A procedure in which inactive guides are initially placed in the patient and the radioactive sources introduced later under more favorable conditions of protection. The sources may be inserted manually or by means of a remote control device.

alpha particle or ray (α): The nucleus of a helium atom ejected from a radioactive nucleus when it disintegrates.

angiography: Radiography of blood vessels after injection of a radio-opaque material into an artery.

atom: The smallest particle of an element.

background radiation: Radiation arising from sources other than the one directly under consideration. Radiations are always present, due to cosmic rays and natural radioactivity of materials in the earth and building materials.

beta particles or rays (β): Electrons, positive or negative, emitted by the nucleus of a radioactive atom when it disintegrates.

betatron: A machine capable of emitting very high energy x rays or electrons.

brachytherapy: A method of radiation therapy in which an encapsulated source or group of sources is utilized to deliver beta or gamma radiation at a distance of up to a few centimeters, by surface, intracavitary or interstitial application.

children: For purposes of this report, individuals less than 18 years of age.

contamination, radioactive: Deposition of radioactive material in any place where its presence is undesirable.

controlled area: A defined area in which the exposure of persons to radiation is under the control of a Radiation Protection Supervisor. (This implies that a controlled area is one that requires control of access, occupancy, and working conditions, for radiation protection purposes.)

cosmic rays: High energy radiation originating outside the earth's atmosphere.

curie (Ci): A unit of radioactivity equal to 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations per second.

decay (radioactive): Reduction in activity of a quantity of radioactive material by disintegration of its atoms.

decontaminate: To remove radioactive contamination.

direct beam (from an x-ray tube): The beam of x rays coming directly from the x-ray tube and directed toward the particular region to be irradiated.

disintegration (radioactive): Breaking down of a radioactive atom, with discharge of alpha, beta, gamma or other radiation.

dose: See absorbed dose.

dose equivalent: A quantity used for radiation protection purposes that expresses on a common scale for all radiations, the irradiation incurred by exposed persons. It is defined as the product of the absorbed dose and certain modifying factors. The unit of absorbed dose is the rem. See rem.

dose rate: See absorbed dose rate.

electron: Subatomic charged particle. Negatively charged electrons are parts of stable atoms. Both negatively and positively charged electrons may be expelled from the radioactive atom when it disintegrates. See beta rays.

encapsulated source: A radionuclide sealed in a container such as a tube or needle. See sealed source.

exposure: A measure of x or gamma radiation at a certain place, based on its ability to produce ionization in air. The unit of exposure is the roentgen (R). See roentgen.

exposure rate: Exposure per unit time.

film badge: A packet of appropriate photographic film and filters, used to determine radiation exposure.

filter: Material in the radiation beam which absorbs preferentially the less penetrating radiation.

fluoroscopy: The observation of the internal features of an object by means of the fluorescence produced on a screen by x rays transmitted through the object.

gamma rays (γ): Electromagnetic radiation like x rays, emitted by the disintegrating radioactive nucleus. In general, gamma rays are more penetrating than x rays.

genetic effect: Change produced in the part of a cell which controls biological reproduction and inheritance. Such changes can be produced by radiation.

gonad: An ovary or testis.

half life, radioactive: Time for the activity of any particular radionuclide to be reduced to one-half of its initial value.

interstitial treatment: Radiation treatment in which needles or "seeds" are introduced directly into tissues. See brachytherapy.

intracavitary treatment: Radiation treatment in which encapsulated sources are introduced into body cavities. See brachytherapy.

intrauterine applicator: A container for encapsulated sources to be introduced into the uterus. See brachytherapy.

ion: An atom that is electrically charged because of gain or loss of electrons.

ionization: The production of ions in a material, usually by exposure to x rays or radiations from radioactive materials.

ionization chamber, pocket: A type of personnel monitor activated by radiation producing ions within it. See monitor.

ionizing radiation: Radiation capable of ionizing neutral atoms.

irradiation: Exposure to radiation.

isotope: One of several nuclides of the same element, having the same nuclear charge but different nuclear mass.

kilovolt peak (kVp): The crest value in kilovolts of the potential difference of a pulsating potential x-ray generator.

limited occupancy area: Area in which the radiation level may be so high that a person, in a day's work, might receive radiation exceeding the permissible dose.

linear accelerator: A particular type of high voltage x-ray machine.

localization films: X-ray films made after the introduction of intracavitary or interstitual sources or applicators, to make sure of their position.

maximum permissible dose: The maximum dose equivalent that the body of a person, or specific parts thereof, shall be allowed to receive in a stated period of time.

microcurie (μCi): The millionth part of a curie, 3.7×10^4 disintegrations per second.

milliampere-seconds (mAs): The product of x-ray tube current in milliamperes and operating time in seconds.

millicurie (mCi): The thousandth part of a curie, 3.7×10^7 disintegrations per second.

millirad (mrad): The thousandth part of a rad.

milliroentgen (mR): The thousandth part of a roentgen.

monitor: Instrument or device for determining, periodically or continually, the exposure rate in an area (area monitoring) or to a person (personnel monitoring), or for determining radioactive contamination.

mutation: Change in the germ plasm of an individual; this change may be transmitted to subsequent generations.

nuclear medicine: Diagnostic or therapeutic use of radionuclides.

personnel monitor: See monitor.

phantom: A volume of tissue-equivalent material used to simulate the absorption and scatter characteristics of a patient's body or of parts thereof.

protective barrier: A barrier of radiation-attenuating material used to reduce radiation exposure.

protective clothing: Aprons, gloves, or other articles of clothing made of lead rubber or other material that absorbs radiation, which will reduce radiation exposure to parts of an individual covered by them.

qualified expert: With reference to radiation protection, a person having the knowledge and training to advise regarding radiation protection needs, to measure ionizing radiation, and to evaluate radiation safety techniques. (For example, persons having relevant certificates from the American Board of Radiology, or the American Board of Health Physics, or those having equivalent qualifications).

rad: The unit of absorbed dose: One rad is 0.01 joules absorbed per kilogram of any material. (Also defined as 100 ergs per gram.)

radiation hazard: Risk of damage produced by the action of radiation on tissue.

radiation, ionizing: Any electromagnetic or particulate radiation capable of producing ions, directly or indirectly, by interaction with matter. (In this report ionizing radiation refers to x rays and the rays from radioactive substances).

Radiation Protection Supervisor (RPS): The person directly responsible for radiation protection. It is his duty to ensure that all procedures are carried out in compliance with established rules.

radiation worker: Any individual engaged in work with radiation, who incurs a certain likelihood of radiation exposure during his or her work, as an occupational risk. Radiation protection for such workers is under the direct supervision of the RPS.

radioactive capsule: Small container, usually sealed, containing radioactive material.

radioactive isotope: Any isotope whose atoms are radioactive.

radioactive precautions sign: A sign, tag, or label required in all areas and on all containers where significant amounts of radioactive materials may be found. These must bear the three-bladed radiation caution sign in purple or magenta on a yellow background. The specific sign to be used depends on the type and degree of hazard present.

radioactivity: The property of certain nuclides of spontaneously disintegrating, with emission of alpha or beta particles or gamma radiation, or particulate and gamma radiation simultaneously.

radiography: The observation of internal features of an object by means of an image produced on photographic film by radiation transmitted through the object.

radionuclide (radioactive nuclide): Any radioactive form of an element.

rem: The unit of dose equivalent. For radiation protection purposes in this report, covering x, beta, and gamma radiation, the number of rems may be considered equal to the number of rads or roentgens.

roentgen (R): The special unit of exposure for x and gamma rays. One roentgen produces 2.58×10^{-4} coulombs per kilogram of air.

sample counting: Determination of radioactivity in a total specimen (blood, urine, etc.) by assaying a known fraction of the whole.

scattered (secondary) radiation: Radiation that, during passage through matter, has been deviated in direction and may have had its energy diminished.

sealed source: A radioactive source sealed in a container or having a bonded cover, in which the container or cover has sufficient mechanical strength to prevent contact with or dispersion of the radioactive material, under the conditions of use and wear for which it was designed.

seeds, radioactive: Very small sealed sources designed to be introduced directly into tissues. They may be removable or be designed to remain in place for complete decay of the radioactive material.

shall: *Shall* indicates a recommendation that is necessary or essential to meet the currently accepted standards of protection.

should: *Should* indicates an advisory recommendation that is to be applied when practicable.

source: A discrete amount of radioactive material, or the part of the x-ray tube from which the rays are emitted.

specific gamma-ray constant: The exposure rate produced by the unfiltered gamma rays from a point source of a defined activity of a radionuclide at a defined distance. Common forms of specific gamma-ray constant are the exposure per millicurie-hour at one centimeter from a point source, and the exposure per 100 mCi-hour at one meter from a point source.

storage area: Properly shielded room or area where contaminated equipment, unused radionuclides, and waste material may be left until the activities have decreased sufficiently for final disposal.

structural shielding: Barrier of attenuating material, used to reduce radiation exposure, incorporated into the structure of a building.

supervoltage: X rays generated at a million volts or more.

survey meter: An instrument used to measure the exposure rate in roentgens per hour at the point being monitored.

teletherapy: Therapeutic irradiation with collimated x rays or gamma rays, the source being at 50 cm or more from the body. Contrast with the definition of brachytherapy.

tracer dose: A dose of radionuclide administered to find out something about an organ, its shape, or its function. The administered dose must be so small as not to produce any radiation effect that might alter the *status quo* of the patient.

transport index: A number on a label on a shipping container that indicates the exposure rate, in milliroentgens per hour, at one meter from the surface of the box, at the time of shipment.

useful beam: See direct beam.

warning signs: See radiation precaution signs.

waste disposal: Disposal of radioactive waste in such a manner that no one can receive undue exposure.

waste, radioactive: Useless material contaminated with radioactive substance. It may result from patients' vomiting or excretion, from an accidental spill, or from a planned clean-up procedure

wipe test: A test for radioactive contamination in which the suspected surface or area is wiped with a filter paper (or other substance) which is then immediately tested for the presence of radioactivity.

The NCRP

The National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements is a nonprofit corporation chartered by Congress in 1964 to:

1. Collect, analyze, develop, and disseminate in the public interest information and recommendations about (a) protection against radiation and (b) radiation measurements, quantities, and units, particularly those concerned with radiation protection;
2. Provide a means by which organizations concerned with the scientific and related aspects of radiation protection and of radiation quantities, units, and measurements may cooperate for effective utilization of their combined resources, and to stimulate the work of such organizations;
3. Develop basic concepts about radiation quantities, units, and measurements, about the application of these concepts, and about radiation protection;
4. Cooperate with the International Commission on Radiological Protection, the International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements, and other national and international organizations, governmental and private, concerned with radiation quantities, units, and measurements and with radiation protection.

The Council is the successor to the unincorporated association of scientists known as the National Committee on Radiation Protection and Measurements and was formed to carry on the work begun by the Committee.

The Council is made up of the members and the participants who serve on the fifty-four Scientific Committees of the Council. The Scientific Committees, composed of experts having detailed knowledge and competence in the particular area of the Committee's interest, draft proposed recommendations. These are then submitted to the full membership of the Council for careful review and approval before being published.

The following comprise the current officers and membership of the Council:

Officers

President	LAURISTON S. TAYLOR
President Elect	WARREN K. SINCLAIR
Vice President	E. DALE TROUT

Secretary and Treasurer	W. Roger Ney
Assistant Secretary	Eugene R. Fidell
Assistant Treasurer	Harold O. Wyckoff

Members

Seymour Abrahamson
Roy E. Albert
John A. Auxler
William J. Bair
Victor P. Bond
Harold S. Boyne
Robert L. Brent
A. Bertrand Brill
Reynold F. Brown
William W. Burr, Jr.
Melvin W. Carter
George W. Casarett
Randall S. Caswell
Arthur B. Chilton
Stephan Cleary
Cyril L. Comar
Patricia Durbin
Merril Eisenbud
Thomas S. Ely
Benjamin G. Ferris
Asher J. Finkel
Donald C. Fleckenstein
Richard F. Foster
Hymer L. Friedell
Arthur H. Gladstein
Robert A. Goepp
Marvin Goldman
Robert O. Gorson
Arthur W. Guy
Ellis M. Hall
John H. Harley
Robert J. Hasterlik
John W. Healy
John M. Heslep
Marylou Ingram
Seymour Jablon
Jacob Kastner
Edward B. Lewis
Charles W. Mays
Roger O. McClellan
Mortimer Mendelsohn
Dade W. Moeller
Russell H. Morgan
Paul E. Morrow
Robert D. Moseley, Jr.
James V. Neel
Robert J. Nelsen
Peter C. Nowell
Herbert M. Parker
Frank Parker
Chester R. Richmond
Lester Rogers
Harald H. Rossi
Robert E. Rowland
William L. Russell
John H. Rust
Eugene L. Saenger
Harry F. Schulte
Raymond Seltser
Warren K. Sinclair
Walter S. Snyder
Lewis V. Spencer
J. Newell Stannard
Chauncey Starr
John B. Storer
Lauriston S. Taylor
Roy C. Thompson
E. Dale Trout
Arthur C. Upton
John C. Villforth
George L. Voelz
Niel Wald
Edward W. Webster
George M. Wilkening

Harold O. Wyckoff

Honorary Members

Edgar C. Barnes
Carl B. Braestrup
Austin M. Brues
Frederick P. Cowan
Robley D. Evans
Paul C. Hodges
George V. LeRoy
Karl Z. Morgan
Edith H. Quimby
Shields Warren

Currently, the following Scientific Committees are actively engaged in formulating recommendations:

SC-1: Basic Radiation Protection Criteria
SC-7: Monitoring Methods and Instruments
SC-9: Medical X- and Gamma-Ray Protection up to 10 MeV (Structural Shielding Design)
SC-11: Incineration of Radioactive Waste
SC-18: Standards and Measurements of Radioactivity for Radiological Use
SC-22: Radiation Shielding for Particle Accelerators
SC-23: Radiation Hazards Resulting from the Release of Radionuclides into the Environment
SC-24: Radionuclides and Labeled Organic Compounds Incorporated in Genetic Material
SC-25: Radiation Protection in the Use of Small Neutron Generators
SC-26: High Energy X-Ray Dosimetry
SC-28: Radiation Exposure from Consumer Products
SC-30: Physical and Biological Properties of Radionuclides
SC-31: Selected Occupational Exposure Problems Arising from Internal Emitters
SC-32: Administered Radioactivity
SC-33: Dose Calculations
SC-34: Maximum Permissible Concentrations for Occupational and Non-Occupational Exposures
SC-35: Environmental Radiation Measurements
SC-37: Procedures for the Management of Contaminated Persons
SC-38: Waste Disposal
SC-39: Microwaves
SC-40: Biological Aspects of Radiation Protection Criteria
SC-41: Radiation Resulting from Nuclear Power Generation
SC-42: Industrial Applications of X Rays and Sealed Sources
SC-44: Radiation Associated with Medical Examinations
SC-45: Radiation Received by Radiation Employees
SC-46: Operational Radiation Safety
SC-47: Instrumentation for the Determination of Dose Equivalent
SC-48: Apportionment of Radiation Exposure
SC-50: Surface Contamination
SC-51: Radiation Protection in Pediatric Radiology and Nuclear Medicine Applied to Children
SC-52: Conceptual Basis of Calculations of Dose Distributions
SC-53: Biological Effects and Exposure Criteria for Radiofrequency Electromagnetic Radiation
SC-54: Bioassay for Assessment of Control of Intake of Radionuclides

In recognition of its responsibility to facilitate and stimulate cooperation among organizations concerned with the scientific and related aspects of radiation protection and measurement, the Council has created a category of NCRP Collaborating Organizations. Organizations or groups of organizations which are national or international in scope and are concerned with scientific problems involving radiation quantities, units, measurements and effects, or radiation protection may be admitted to collaborating status by the Council. The present Collaborating Organizations with which the NCRP maintains liaison are as follows:

American Academy of Dermatology
American Association of Physicists in Medicine
American College of Radiology
American Dental Association
American Industrial Hygiene Association
American Insurance Association
American Medical Association
American Nuclear Society
American Occupational Medical Association
American Podiatry Association
American Public Health Association
American Radium Society
American Roentgen Ray Society
American Society of Radiologic Technologists
American Veterinary Medical Association
Association of University Radiologists
Atomic Industrial Forum
College of American Pathologists
Defense Civil Preparedness Agency
Genetics Society of America
Health Physics Society
National Bureau of Standards
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Radiation Research Society
Radiological Society of North America
Society of Nuclear Medicine
United States Air Force
United States Army
United States Energy Research and Development Administration
United States Environmental Protection Agency
United States Navy
United States Nuclear Regulatory Commission
United States Public Health Service

The NCRP has found its relationships with these organizations to be extremely valuable to continued progress in its program.

To all of these organizations the Council expresses its profound appreciation for their support.

Initial funds for publication of NCRP reports were provided by a grant from the James Picker Foundation and for this the Council wishes to express its deep appreciation.

The NCRP seeks to promulgate information and recommendations based on leading scientific judgment on matters of radiation protection and measurement and to foster cooperation among organizations concerned with these matters. These efforts are intended to serve the public interest and the Council welcomes comments and suggestions on its reports or activities from those interested in its work.

The Council's activities are made possible by the voluntary contribution of the time and effort of its members and participants and the generous support of the following organizations:

Alfred P. Sloan Foundation
American Academy of Dental Radiology
American Academy of Dermatology
American Association of Physicists in Medicine
American College of Radiology
American College of Radiology Foundation
American Dental Association
American Industrial Hygiene Association
American Insurance Association
American Medical Association
American Mutual Insurance Alliance
American Nuclear Society
American Occupational Medical Association
American Osteopathic College of Radiology
American Podiatry Association
American Public Health Association
American Radium Society
American Roentgen Ray Society
American Society of Radiologic Technologists
American Veterinary Medical Association
American Veterinary Radiology Society
Association of University Radiologists
Atomic Industrial Forum
Battelle Memorial Institute
College of American Pathologists
Defense Civil Preparedness Agency
Edward Mallinckrodt, Jr. Foundation
Genetics Society of America
Health Physics Society
James Picker Foundation
National Association of Photographic Manufacturers
National Bureau of Standards
National Electrical Manufacturers Association
Radiation Research Society
Radiological Society of North America
Society of Nuclear Medicine
United States Energy Research and Development Administration
United States Environmental Protection Agency
United States Public Health Service

NCRP Reports

NCRP Reports are distributed by the NCRP Publications' office. Information on prices and how to order may be obtained by directing an inquiry to:

NCRP Publications
P.O. Box 30175
Washington, D.C. 20014

The extant NCRP Reports are listed below.

NCRP Report No.	Title
8	*Control and Removal of Radioactive Contamination in Laboratories* (1951)
9	*Recommendations for Waste Disposal of Phosphorus-32 and Iodine-131 for Medical Users* (1951)
10	*Radiological Monitoring Methods and Instruments* (1952)
12	*Recommendations for the Disposal of Carbon-14 Wastes* (1953)
16	*Radioactive Waste Disposal in the Ocean* (1954)
22	*Maximum Permissible Body Burdens and Maximum Permissible Concentrations of Radionuclides in Air and in Water for Occupational Exposure* (1959) [Includes Addendum 1 issued in August 1963]
23	*Measurement of Neutron Flux and Spectra for Physical and Biological Applications* (1960)
25	*Measurement of Absorbed Dose of Neutrons and of Mixtures of Neutrons and Gamma Rays* (1961)
27	*Stopping Powers for Use with Cavity Chambers* (1961)
28	*A Manual of Radioactivity Procedures* (1961)
30	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Materials* (1964)
32	*Radiation Protection in Educational Institutions* (1966)
33	*Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies Up to 10 MeV – Equipment Design and Use* (1968)
35	*Dental X-Ray Protection* (1970)
36	*Radiation Protection in Veterinary Medicine* (1970)
37	*Precautions in the Management of Patients Who Have Received Therapeutic Amounts of Radionuclides* (1970)

38 *Protection Against Neutron Radiation* (1971)
39 *Basic Radiation Protection Criteria* (1971)
40 *Protection Against Radiation From Brachytherapy Sources* (1972)
41 *Specification of Gamma-Ray Brachytherapy Sources* (1974)
42 *Radiological Factors Affecting Decision-Making in a Nuclear Attack* (1974)
43 *Review of the Current State of Radiation Protection Philosophy* (1975)
44 *Krypton-85 in the Atmosphere—Accumulation, Biological Significance, and Control Technology* (1975)
45 *Natural Background Radiation in the United States* (1975)
46 *Alpha-Emitting Particles in Lungs* (1975)
47 *Tritium Measurement Techniques* (1976)
48 *Radiation Protection for Medical and Allied Health Personnel* (1976)
49 *Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation for Medical Use of X Rays and Gamma Rays of Energies Up to 10 MeV* (1976)
50 *Environmental Radiation Measurements* (1976)
51 *Radiation Protection Design Guidelines For 0.1–100 MeV Particle Accelerator Facilities* (1977)
52 *Cesium-137 From the Environment to Man: Metabolism and Dose* (1977)
53 *Review of NCRP Radiation Dose Limit to Embryo and Fetus in Occupationally-Exposed Women* (1977)
54 *Medical Radiation Exposure of Pregnant and Potentially Pregnant Women* (1977)
55 *Protection of the Thyroid Gland in the Event of Releases of Radioiodine* (1977)

Binders for NCRP Reports are available. Two sizes make it possible to collect into small binders the "old series" of reports (NCRP Reports Nos. 1–31) and into large binders the more recent publications (NCRP Reports Nos. 32–55). Each binder will accommodate from five to seven reports. The binders carry the identification "NCRP Reports" and come with label holders which permit the user to attach labels showing the reports contained in each binder.

The following bound sets of NCRP Reports are also available:

Volume I. NCRP Reports Nos. 8, 9, 10, 12, 16, 22
Volume II. NCRP Reports Nos. 23, 25, 27, 28, 30
Volume III. NCRP Reports Nos. 32, 33, 35, 36, 37
Volume IV. NCRP Reports Nos. 38, 39, 40, 41
Volume V. NCRP Reports Nos. 42, 43, 44, 45, 46
Volume VI. NCRP Reports Nos. 47, 48, 49, 50, 51

(Titles of the individual reports contained in each volume are given above.)

The following NCRP reports are now superseded and/or out of print:

NCRP Report No.	Title
1	*X-Ray Protection* (1931). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 3]
2	*Radium Protection* (1934). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 4]
3	*X-Ray Protection* (1936). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 6]
4	*Radium Protection* (1938). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 13]
5	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Luminous Compounds* (1941). [Out of print]
6	*Medical X-Ray Protection up to Two Million Volts* (1949). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 18]
7	*Safe Handling of Radioactive Isotopes* (1949). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 30]
11	*Maximum Permissible Amounts of Radioisotopes in the Human Body and Maximum Permissible Concentrations in Air and Water* (1953). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 22]
13	*Protection Against Radiations from Radium, Cobalt-60 and Cesium-137* (1954). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 24]
14	*Protection Against Betatron-Synchrotron Radiations Up To 100 Million Electron Volts* (1954). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 51]
15	*Safe Handling of Cadavers Containing Radioactive Isotopes* (1953). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 21]
17	*Permissible Dose from External Sources of Ionizing Radiation* (1954) including *Maximum Permissible Exposure to Man, Addendum to National Bureau Of Standards Handbook 59* (1958). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 39]
18	*X-Ray Protection* (1955). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 26]
19	*Regulation of Radiation Exposure by Legislative Means* (1955). [Out of print]
20	*Protection Against Neutron Radiation Up to 80 Million Electron Volts* (1957). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 38]
21	*Safe Handling of Bodies Containing Radioactive Isotopes* (1958) [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 37]
24	*Protection Against Radiations from Sealed Gamma Sources* (1960). [Superseded by NCRP Reports Nos. 33, 34 and 40]
26	*Medical X-Ray Protection Up to Three Million Volts* (1961). [Superseded by NCRP Reports Nos. 33, 34, 35 and 36]
29	*Exposure to Radiation in an Emergency* (1962). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 42]

31 *Shielding for High-Energy Electron Accelerator Installations* (1964). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 51]

34 *Medical X-Ray and Gamma-Ray Protection for Energies Up to 10 MeV – Structural Shielding Design and Evaluation* (1970). [Superseded by NCRP Report No. 49].

The following statements of the NCRP were published outside of the NCRP Report series:

"Blood Counts, Statement of the National Committee on Radiation Protection," Radiology 63, 428 (1954)

"Statements on Maximum Permissible Dose from Television Receivers and Maximum Permissible Dose to the Skin of the Whole Body," Am. J. Roentgenol., Radium Ther. Nucl. Med. 84, 152 (1960) and Radiology 75, 122 (1960).

X-Ray Protection Standards for Home Television Receivers, Interim Statement of the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1968)

Specification of Units of Natural Uranium and Natural Thorium (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, Washington, 1973)

Copies of the statements published in journals may be consulted in libraries. A limited number of copies of the last two statements listed above are available for distribution by NCRP Publications.

Index

Absorbed dose, 5, 56
  Absorbed dose rate, 56
Access to x-ray equipment, 13
Activity, radioactive, 16, 56, 58
  Curie (C), 16, 56
  Microcurie (μC), 16, 56
  Millicurie (mC), 16, 58
Afterloading technique, 25, 56
Allied health personnel, 1
  Laboratory technicians, 1
  Messengers and guards concerned with transport of radioactive materials, 1
  Nuclear medicine technicians and technologists, 1
  Nurses, aides, orderlies, 1
  Porters, janitors, maintenance men, 1
  Secretaries and clerks in or near radiation areas, 1
  Shipping and receiving room personnel, 1
  X-ray technicians and technologists, 1
Alpha particle or ray, 16, 56
Animal radiography, 13
Animals containing radioactive materials, handling of, 30
Angiography, 12, 56
Atom, 15, 56
Autopsy, 28, 31, 32
  Protective clothing, 32
  Protection from contamination, 31

Background radiation, 5, 56
Beta particles or rays, 16, 56
Betatron, 14, 56
Biological considerations, 4
  Biological results of exposure to ionizing radiations, 4
  Somatic effects, 4
  Genetic effects, 4
  Genetic mutations, see mutations, genetic
Brachytherapy, 24, 25, 26, 56
  Afterloading, 25
  Localization films, 25
  Nursing care, 26
  Source containers, 25

Caution signs, radioactivity, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 58
  Areas or rooms, 41, 42
  Containers, 41, 43
    shipping, 41, 42
    in institutions, 41, 42, 44
  Hospital rooms, charts, patients, 41, 45, 46
Cesium teletherapy devices, 14
Children, 56
Cobalt teletherapy devices, 14
Containers of radioactive material, 17, 18
Contamination, radioactive, 19, 20, 23, 24, 29, 30, 31, 32, 56
Controlled area, 7, 56
Cosmic rays, 5, 56
Curie (C), 16, 56
Cystoscopic radiography, 11

Death of patient containing radioactive material, 27
Decay area, 19
Decay, radioactive, 15, 57
Decontaminate, 56
Dental radiography, 12
Detecting device, see radiation detecting devices
Diagnostic procedures with radionuclides, 20
  Patient measurements, 20
  Tracers, 20
  Sample counting, 20
Diagnostic radiology, 10, 11, 12, 13
  Angiography, 12
  Animal radiography, 13
  Cystoscopic radiography, 11
  Dental radiography, 12
  Fluoroscopy, 12
  General radiography, 10
  Operating room radiography, 11
  Portable x-ray machines, 11

  Protective garments, 10
Direct beam from an x-ray tube, 11, 12, 56
Disintegration, radioactive, 15, 56
Dose, 5, 6, 56, 57
  Dose rate, 57
Dose equivalent, 57
Dose limit, see maximum permissible dose, 5, 7, 8
  General public, 7, 8

Electron, 15, 57
Emergency procedures, 51, 53
  Broken sealed source, 53
  Loss of sealed source, 53
  Major calamity, 53
  Spills, 51
Encapsulated source, see sealed sources, 19, 22, 25, 26, 59
Exposure, 57
  Exposure rate, 57
Experimental animal, biological, and chemical specimen irradiation, 14

Film as radiation detector, 37
Film badge, 7, 57
Film damage from brachytherapy patients, 25
Filter, 57
Fluoroscopy, 12, 57

Gamma rays, 16, 57
Geiger-Mueller counter, 37
Genetic effect, 4, 57
  Mutations, 4
Gonad, 57

Half life, radioactive, 15, 57
High activity laboratory, 18
  "Hot lab", 18

Immunoassay, 29
Incineration of radioactive waste, 35
Interstitial treatment, 22, 57
Intracavitary treatment, 22, 24, 57
Intrauterine applicator, 22, 57
Ion, 57
Ionization, 57
Ionization chamber (pocket), 37, 57
Irradiation, 57
Isotope, 15, 57
  Isotope, radioactive, 15

Janitorial personnel, 18

Kilovolt peak (kVp), 38, 57

Labels, radioactivity, 17, 19, 41–48
Laboratories using radionuclides, 29, 30
Limited occupancy area, 9, 57
Linear accelerator, 14, 57
Localization films, 25, 57

Mammography, 10
Maximum permissible concentrations of radionuclides in air and water, 33
Maximum permissible dose and dose limits, 5, 6, 36, 57
Microcurie (μC), 16, 57
Milliampere-seconds (MAS), 15, 57
Millicurie (mC), 15, 58
Milliroentgen, 58
Monitors (radiation), 7, 37
  Dosimeters, 7, 37
Morgue, 31, 32
  Autopsy, 31
  Contamination, 31
  Protective clothing, 32
Mutation, 4, 58

Nuclide, radioactive, 15
Nursing care, patients containing radioactive material, 21, 22–27

Operating room radiography, 11

Patient care, see nursing care
Patient restraint, 10, 11
Portable (mobile) x-ray equipment, 11
Pregnancy, radiation in, 6
Pregnant attendants, 23
Protective clothing, 10, 58

Rad, 5, 58
Radiation areas, 2, 7, 8, 9ff, 13ff, 17ff
  Nuclear medicine, 17ff
  Radiation therapy, 13ff
  X-ray diagnosis, 9ff
Radiation detecting devices, 37
  Film, 37
  Geiger-Mueller counter, 37
  Ionization chamber, pocket ionization chamber, 37
  Scintillation counter, 37
Radiation protection supervisor, 7, 9, 12, 13, 17ff
Radiation safety surveys, 7
Radiation worker, 6, 9

- Classification and monitoring, 9
- Radiations, radioactive, 16
  - Alpha, 16
  - Beta, 16
  - Gamma, 16
- Radioactive material receiving and disbursing areas, 17, 18, 19, 20
  - High activity laboratory (hot lab), 18
  - Janitorial personnel, 18
  - Sealed source storage, 19
  - Security, 20
  - Storage and decay area, 19
  - Transport index, 17
  - Warning signs, 19
- Radioactive nuclides (isotopes), 15, 16
  - General considerations, 15, 16
- Radioactive nuclides, diagnostic procedures, 20, 21
  - Patient waiting areas, 20
  - Procedures, 20
  - Nursing care, 21
  - Patient measurements, 20
  - Sample counting, 20
  - Tracers, 20
- Radioactive nuclides, therapeutic procedures, 21ff, 22ff, 22, 24, 27
  - Attendant's attitude, 27
  - Brachytherapy, 22, 24
  - Material injected into cavities, 22, 24
  - Material inserted and left permanently, 22, 24
  - Material by mouth, 22, 24
  - Patient care, 22ff
- Radioactivity, 15ff, 15, 16
  - Activity, 16
  - Units, 16
    - Curie (C), 16
    - Millicurie (mC), 16
    - Microcurie (μC), 16
  - Radioactive isotopes, 15
    - Disintegration, 15
    - Half life, 15
- Radioactive waste disposal, 33, 34, 35
  - Concentration, 33
  - Dispersion, 33
  - Permissible air and water concentration, 33
  - Gaseous waste, 34
  - Liquid waste, 34
  - Patients' excreta, 35
  - Solid waste, 35
    - Incineration, 35
- Radioactivity laboratories, 29ff, 29, 30
  - Animal, 30
  - Biology, 29
  - Chemistry, 29
  - Contamination, 29
  - Personal habits, 29
  - Physics, 29
- Radionuclides, physical data, 39
- Rem, 5, 58
- Roentgen, 5, 59

- Sample counting, 20, 59
- Scattered radiation, 3, 12, 13, 59
- Scintillation counter, 37
- Sealed sources, 19, 22, 25, 26, 52, 53, 59
  - Loss of, 52
  - Ruptured or broken, 53
  - Source containers, 53
- Secondary radiation from patient, 38, 49
  - Around bed of patient with radium, 49
  - Basis of measurements, 38
- Security, in radionuclide areas, 20
- *Shall*, 3
- *Should*, 3
- Somatic effect, 4
- Spills of radioactive material, 51
- Storage areas, 19
  - Contaminated equipment, 19
  - Sealed sources, 19
  - Unused radionuclides, 19
  - Waste radionuclides, 19
- Survey meter, 37, 59

- Teletherapy, 14, 59
- Therapeutic procedures, radionuclides, 21 see Radionuclide therapeutic procedures
- Therapeutic radiology, 13, 14
  - Gamma ray teletherapy, 13
  - Supervoltage, 14
    - Betatron, 14
    - Linear accelerator, 14
    - Radionuclide teletherapy, 14
    - Machines, 14
- Tracer, radioactive, 20
- Transport index, 17, 59
- Transportation of radioactive material, 18

- Unit of dose, 5, 58, 59
  - Rad, 5, 58
  - Rem, 5, 58
  - Roentgen, 5, 59

U. S. Regional Coordinating Offices for Radiological Assistance, 54

Visitors to patients undergoing radionuclide therapy, 23

Warning signs, radioactivity, see caution signs, 41
Waste, radioactive, see radioactive waste, 33

X-Ray Department, 9, 10ff, 13, 14
  Access to x-ray equipment, 13
  Classification of workers, 9
  Diagnostic radiology, 10ff
  Experimental laboratories, 14
  General information, 9
  Limited occupancy areas, 9
  Radiation safety surveys, 9
  Therapeutic radiology, 13